

Oracle® iStore

Concepts and Procedures

Release 11*i*

May 2001

Part No. A86123-03

Copyright © 2000, 2001, Oracle Corporation. All rights reserved.

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information of Oracle Corporation; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent, and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of the Programs is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Oracle Corporation.

If the Programs are delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing or using the programs on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

Restricted Rights Notice Programs delivered subject to the DOD FAR Supplement are "commercial computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs, including documentation, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement. Otherwise, Programs delivered subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations are "restricted computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the restrictions in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June, 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and Oracle Corporation disclaims liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

Oracle is a registered trademark. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments	xi
Preface	xiii
Introduction to Oracle iStore 11i	xiii
Intended Audience	xiv
Related Documents.....	xiv
Conventions.....	xv
Documentation Accessibility	xvi
Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation.....	xvi
1 Understanding Oracle iStore 11i	
1.1 Overview of Oracle iStore 11i.....	1-1
1.2 Main Components of Oracle iStore 11i Functionality	1-3
1.3 Oracle iStore 11i Business Objects.....	1-4
1.4 Business-to-Business (B2B) Features	1-5
1.4.1 B2B User Registration	1-5
1.4.2 B2B User and Role Management	1-7
1.4.3 Restricting Specialty Stores by Organization.....	1-7
1.4.4 The B2B User’s Shopping Cart	1-7
1.5 The Oracle iStore 11i Shopping Cart	1-9
1.6 Access Control	1-10
1.6.1 Users.....	1-10
1.6.2 Specialty Stores and Responsibilities	1-10
1.6.3 Direct Access.....	1-11

1.7	Globalization	1-16
1.8	Relationship of Oracle iStore 11 <i>i</i> to Other Oracle Applications	1-17
1.9	Roles and Responsibilities in Oracle Applications	1-20
1.9.1	Defining Application Users	1-20
1.9.2	Responsibilities Define Application Privileges.....	1-20
1.9.3	Defining a Responsibility	1-21
1.9.4	Predefined Responsibilities.....	1-22
1.9.5	Responsibilities and Request Security Groups	1-22
1.9.6	Responsibilities and Function Security	1-22
1.9.7	User Roles and Responsibilities	1-22
1.10	Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts.....	1-23
1.11	Hierarchy Key Points and Concepts.....	1-24
1.12	Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts.....	1-25
1.13	Customer User Interface Key Points and Concepts	1-26
1.14	Search Functionality Key Points and Concepts	1-26
1.15	Business Flows and Templates for Search	1-28
1.16	Business Flows and Templates for Shopping Cart	1-30
1.17	Business Flows and Templates for B2B Checkout.....	1-32
1.18	Business Flows and Templates for B2C Checkout.....	1-35
1.19	Business Flows and Templates for Account.....	1-37
1.20	Business Flows and Templates for Customer Information	1-39
1.21	Business Flows and Templates for Carts and Lists	1-41
1.22	Business Flows and Templates for Orders and Invoices	1-43
1.23	How the Store Displays Multimedia	1-44
1.23.1	Multimedia Called Directly	1-44
1.23.2	Multimedia Called Indirectly	1-44
1.24	How the Store Displays Templates.....	1-45
1.24.1	Templates Called Directly.....	1-45
1.24.2	Templates Called Indirectly.....	1-46
1.25	Understanding JSPs.....	1-46
1.26	Standard Includes.....	1-48
1.27	JSP Processing	1-49
1.28	PageCompileServlet	1-50
1.29	The Request Object.....	1-51

2 Using Oracle iStore 11i

2.1	Setting Up the Store Business Flow	2-1
2.2	Overview of Creating Your Store.....	2-2
2.3	Accessing the Merchant UI.....	2-4
2.4	Creating Specialty Stores.....	2-5
2.5	Customizing Multimedia	2-9
2.5.1	Creating Media Source Files.....	2-10
2.5.2	Cataloging Multimedia	2-10
2.6	Cataloging Multimedia Components.....	2-13
2.7	Customizing Templates.....	2-16
2.7.1	Creating Template Source Files	2-16
2.7.2	Choosing Template Names.....	2-18
2.7.3	Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager	2-20
2.8	Cataloging Display Styles	2-23
2.9	Creating and Modifying the Hierarchy	2-25
2.10	Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog	2-32
2.11	Creating Images for Products.....	2-37
2.12	Adding Item Descriptive Flexfields.....	2-38
2.13	Selling Serviceable and Service Items.....	2-40
2.13.1	Setting Up Serviceable Items in Oracle Inventory	2-40
2.13.2	Setting Up Service Items in Oracle Inventory.....	2-41
2.13.3	Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing	2-43
2.13.4	Setting Up Service Items in AOL	2-45
2.14	Defining Product Relationships	2-46
2.14.1	Using Seeded Relationship Types	2-47
2.14.2	Creating Relationship Types	2-48
2.15	Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories	2-50
2.15.1	Viewing Template Details Assigned to a Category	2-52
2.15.2	Assigning a Template to a Category	2-52
2.16	Setting Up Product Searches.....	2-53
2.16.1	Setting Up Oracle Inventory for Product Search.....	2-54
2.16.2	Setting Search Profile Options.....	2-54
2.16.3	Populating the Oracle iStore 11i Search Table for Category Level Search	2-55
2.16.4	Populating the Oracle iStore 11i Search Table for Section Level Search.....	2-56
2.16.5	Changing Between Category Level Search and Section Level Search	2-57

2.16.6	Enabling a Fuzzy Search	2-58
2.16.7	Creating Search Index Tables	2-59
2.16.8	PL/SQL and Java/JSPs Used in Search	2-60
2.16.9	Customizing Search	2-60
2.16.10	Adding Stopwords to Searches	2-61
2.17	Customizing the Shopping Cart.....	2-62
2.17.1	Enabling Unit of Measure (UOM) Conversions	2-63
2.17.2	Allowing Decimal Quantities for Items	2-63
2.17.3	Specifying Flexfields At the Checkout Page.....	2-64
2.17.4	Setting Up Credit Card Payments in Oracle iStore 11i	2-65
2.18	Testing The Store	2-67

3 Administering Oracle iStore 11i

3.1	Roles and Permissions for Oracle iStore 11i Users	3-1
3.2	Setting Up Oracle iStore 11i Customer Types	3-7
3.2.1	Setting Default Customer Roles	3-8
3.2.2	Setting Default Customer Responsibilities	3-8
3.3	Setting Up B2B Users	3-9
3.3.1	Creating B2B User Roles.....	3-12
3.3.2	Approving B2B Users	3-15
3.3.3	Modifying B2B User Data	3-17
3.4	Managing the Cache.....	3-22
3.4.1	Purging the Entire Cache	3-23
3.4.2	Purging the Section Cache	3-23
3.4.3	Purging the Product Cache.....	3-24

A Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings

A.1	Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings	A-1
-----	---	-----

B Standards for Customizing JavaServer Pages

B.1	JSP Standards (Customer Facing)	B-1
B.1.1	Transactions and Database Connections	B-3
B.1.2	Exception Handling	B-5
B.1.3	API Standards	B-5
B.2	Passing Values Across Templates.....	B-6
B.3	Passing Parameters/Cookies.....	B-8
B.4	Customizing Oracle iStore 11i Using APIs.....	B-8
B.5	Modifying the Customer User Interface	B-9
B.5.1	Changing the Text in Bins.....	B-9
B.5.2	Changing the Layout of Bins	B-9
B.6	Using Forms with JSPs	B-11
B.7	Using JavaBeans with JSPs.....	B-11
B.8	Adding Error Pages.....	B-12
B.9	Handling Runtime Exceptions	B-12

C Customizing the Catalog

C.1	Catalog Display Overview	C-1
C.1.1	Section Display Flow	C-1
C.1.2	Item Display Flow	C-5
C.2	Seeded Catalog Templates.....	C-5
C.3	Customizing Section Templates.....	C-12
C.3.1	Customizing the Section Routing Behavior	C-12
C.3.2	Customizing the Section Browse Bin	C-13
C.3.3	Customizing the Section Path	C-14
C.3.4	Customizing the Common Layout Used by Multiple Section Templates	C-14
C.3.5	Creating a Section Page Using a Common Layout	C-15
C.3.6	Creating a Section Page With a Custom Layout.....	C-19
C.4	Customizing Item Templates.....	C-25
C.4.1	Customizing the Item Routing Behavior	C-25
C.4.2	Creating an Item Detail Template.....	C-26

D Oracle iStore 11 / User Interface Reference

D.1	Specialty Stores	D-1
D.2	Specialty Store Detail	D-2
D.3	Store Flags.....	D-4
D.4	Supported Responsibilities	D-6
D.5	Access Restrictions	D-8
D.6	Currencies and Price Lists.....	D-10
D.7	Supported Business Units	D-12
D.8	Multimedia	D-13
D.9	Multimedia Details.....	D-14
D.10	Multimedia Components	D-15
D.11	Multimedia Component Details.....	D-16
D.12	Templates.....	D-17
D.13	Template Details	D-19
D.14	View All Mappings	D-20
D.15	Templates - Assigned Categories	D-21
D.16	Source File Details	D-22
D.17	Display Styles.....	D-24
D.18	Display Style Details	D-25
D.19	Hierarchy	D-26
D.20	Products	D-28
D.21	Basic Information (for Products)	D-30
D.22	Hierarchy Paths (for Products).....	D-31
D.23	Category and Display Styles (for Products)	D-32
D.24	Multimedia Components (for Products).....	D-33
D.25	Relationships (for Products)	D-35
D.26	Specialty Stores (for Products).....	D-36
D.27	Categories	D-37
D.28	Category - Templates Assigned.....	D-38
D.29	Category - Display Styles	D-39
D.30	Category - Multimedia Components.....	D-40
D.31	Relationships	D-41
D.32	Create Relationship and Relationship Detail	D-42
D.33	Add Rules	D-43
D.34	Preview Rules.....	D-45

D.35	Relationship Rule Results and Relationship Result	D-46
D.36	Purge Entire Cache.....	D-47
D.37	Purge Section Cache.....	D-48
D.38	Section Cache	D-49
D.39	Purge Product Cache	D-50
D.40	Product Cache.....	D-51

Glossary

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle iStore Concepts and Procedures, Release 11*i*

Part No. A86123-03

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the document title and part number, and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- Electronic mail: eccontent_us@oracle.com
- FAX: (650) 654-6208 Attn: Oracle iStore Documentation
- Postal service:
Oracle Corporation
Oracle iStore Documentation
500 Oracle Parkway, MS: 60p4
Redwood Shores, CA 94065
USA

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, telephone number, and (optionally) electronic mail address.

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

Preface

This preface covers general information about Oracle iStore 11*i* and describes the intended audience for this document as well as related documentation.

Introduction to Oracle iStore 11*i*

Oracle iStore 11*i* is an electronic commerce application which provides a Web-based channel for unassisted selling of products and services direct to customers and business partners. Oracle iStore 11*i* enables the easy creation, management, and personalization of powerful Web-based stores in a secure and personalized environment. With seamless integration to Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) and Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Applications and to the Oracle Call Center and Telephony suite, Oracle iStore 11*i* enables companies to bring products to market faster and to provide unique customer care. Oracle iStore 11*i* also represents a framework for building commerce applications through its support for multiple payment systems, and its support for business functions, such as order and inventory management, tax, and shipping and handling.

Release 11*i* adds new shopping models, enhanced business to business functionality, content management features, new payment options, quote creation functionality for the merchant organization's sales representatives, contract negotiation features, and more.

Intended Audience

This guide is aimed at the following users:

- Web Store Administrators
- System Administrators (SA), Database Administrators (DBA), and others with similar responsibility

This guide assumes you have the following prerequisites:

- Understanding of the company business processes
- Knowledge of products and services as defined by your marketing policies
- Basic understanding of Oracle and Developer/2000.

Related Documents

For more information on implementing and using Oracle iStore 11i, see the latest versions of the following manuals:

- *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide, Release 11i*

This document has the information needed to implement Oracle iStore 11i, including procedures for setting up and customizing Oracle iStore 11i, profile option descriptions, and API documentation.

- *Implementing Oracle CRM: ERP Functional Checklist - Release 11i*, available at <http://metalink.oracle.com>

This document provides users with information on the functional flows of other Oracle Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) Applications when integrated with Oracle Customer Relationship Management products.

- *Implementing Oracle CRM: Foundation Functional Checklist - Release 11i*, available at <http://metalink.oracle.com>

This document provides users with information on the functional flows of other Oracle Foundation Applications when integrated with Oracle Customer Relationship Management products.

For more information on Oracle application modules that integrate with Oracle iStore 11i, see the latest versions of the following manuals:

- *Oracle Applications Concepts, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide, Release 11i*

- *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Applications User's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle CRM Foundation Concepts and Procedures, Release 11i*
- *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle HTML Quoting Implementation Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle iPayment Concepts and Procedures, Release 11i*
- *Oracle iPayment Implementation Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Order Management User's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Pricing User's Guide, Release 11i*
- *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide, Release 11i*

Check Oracle MetaLink at <http://metalink.oracle.com> for the most up-to-date Oracle documentation.

Conventions

This manual uses the typographic conventions listed in the following table:

Convention	Meaning
<i>italic text</i>	Book titles
Courier text	User commands, file content examples, directory names
UPPERCASE	Structured Query Language (SQL) commands, initialization parameters, profile options, responsibilities, or environment variables
boldface text	Menu, button, keyboard, and form options, emphasis
< >	Angle brackets enclose user-supplied names. Note: Do not type the angle brackets.

Documentation Accessibility

Oracle's goal is to make our products, services, and supporting documentation accessible to the disabled community with good usability. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the Java and SQL*Plus code examples in this document. The conventions for writing Java and SQL*Plus code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Understanding Oracle iStore 11i

This chapter provides overviews of Oracle iStore 11i and its components, explanations of key concepts, features, and functions, as well as Oracle iStore 11i's relationships to other Oracle or third-party applications.

1.1 Overview of Oracle iStore 11i

Oracle iStore 11i is an electronic commerce application that businesses use to sell products directly to customers over the World Wide Web. Businesses can customize Oracle iStore 11i to set up an online store and integrate the front end order capturing system with the order fulfillment system. Using Oracle iStore 11i, a business can create, manage, and personalize a powerful Web-based store in a secure and scalable environment.

Key features of Oracle iStore 11i include the following:

- **Specialty stores** to create different stores within a single instance for serving different customer segments. Each store can have its own product selection, user interface, and process flows, while all the stores can utilize a unified, central merchant administration and repository of products and content.
- **A rich product catalog** that can display in multiple languages and currencies and is dynamically generated to reflect customer-specific product selection and pricing. The product catalog also supports a variety of relationships between products and product groups.
- **Oracle Configurator** for guided selling of complex products and configurable items
- **Sophisticated order capture** for customer-specific pricing, shipping and handling, and tax, and access to inventory availability

- **Channel integration** to leverage assets and processes, and to achieve a consistent customer experience across the contact points
- **Seeded roles and permissions** to offer personalized features for different customer segments and channel partners
- **Self-administration** that enables customers to manage store users and processes, thereby lowering operational costs
- **Personalization and recommendations** that cross-sell and up-sell items and improve the visits to purchase ratio for your Web stores
- **B2B functionality** that allows management of complex relationships with corporate customers in a self-service environment

Create one or more specialty stores using your own configuration of the following components:

- **Templates** that are provided with the application or that you create
- **Media components** that are provided with the application or that you define
- **Multimedia**, including text, from any source
- **Product information** that you enter using the application
- **Product information** that you supply in Oracle Inventory
- **Logical template names** that you map to template files based on specialty store and display language
- **Logical multimedia names** that you map to multimedia files based on product and display language
- **Registration requirements** including an approval process for business customers

The integration with other Oracle applications provides powerful functionality for your store that you can turn into an exceptional customer experience.

You can use the templates provided with Oracle iStore 11i to create quickly a fully functioning Web store. Oracle iStore 11i provides functional templates that control the flow of information through the store, as well as display templates that determine the appearance of store sections and products.

Note: After a customer places an order in the store, the order cannot be cancelled within Oracle iStore 11i. The customer must contact a customer service representative to cancel the order.

Oracle iStore 11i offers additional functionality that enhances the customer experience and level of service for B2B users. See [Section 1.4, "Business-to-Business \(B2B\) Features"](#) for a review of the B2B features available in Oracle iStore 11i.

1.2 Main Components of Oracle iStore 11i Functionality

Oracle iStore 11i functionality consists of the following components:

- **Business Objects**—The schema for representing and storing customers, orders, product catalog and presentation elements. These entities are persistent, shared across all Oracle applications, and manipulated by Java APIs provided within Oracle iStore 11i's runtime services.
- **Customer Facing UI**—Referred to as templates in Oracle iStore 11i, the Customer UI essentially consists of JavaServer Pages™ (JSP™). The application receives an HTTP request and executes the JSP. Accordingly, the JSPs use Oracle iStore 11i's runtime services to reply in HTML.
- **Runtime Services and APIs**—The coupling of certain common services available within all e-commerce applications (Oracle Foundation) and Java-based APIs (includes some PL/SQL APIs). This combination queries Oracle iStore 11i's persistent storage of objects and relationships and enables update operations.
- **Store Manager**—The component that enables business users without programming knowledge to manage Oracle iStore 11i through data setup. Store Manager tasks are performed in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI. See [Section 2.3, "Accessing the Merchant UI"](#) for more information.

1.3 Oracle iStore 11i Business Objects

Oracle iStore 11i shares and leverages the Oracle Applications schema for modeling and storing customer names, products, and orders. In addition, Oracle iStore 11i also provides the following additional business objects to enhance presentation capability:

- **Customer Master**—The manager and storage unit for customer information, this business object model is consistent across all Oracle applications.
- **Multimedia**—Oracle iStore 11i organizes and stores the body of media files used for presentation on the storefront. The multimedia object also supports the organization of foreign language and specialty store media files. You can sort and name these media files using a logical name, which the application calls according to the Oracle iStore 11i user's language preference and chosen specialty store.
- **Order System**—The manager and storage unit for customer orders and their statuses, this business object model is consistent across all Oracle applications.
- **Product Catalog**—The product catalog consists of the following components:
 - Item Master in Oracle Inventory
 - Hierarchy created and managed within Oracle iStore 11i
 - Relationships and rules between differing items

The product catalog is complemented by a set of dependency rules created in Oracle Configurator that provides configuration and validation abilities.

- **Specialty Stores**—This feature of Oracle iStore 11i allows multiple store fronts operated and managed in one central instance. The specialty stores may differ in appearance, products, or processing flow.
- **Templates**—Essentially the JSPs, templates are similar to multimedia files in that Oracle iStore 11i supports the mapping of multiple JSP files to one logically named template.
- **User Information**—The manager and storage unit for user roles and privileges, this business object model is consistent across all Oracle applications.

1.4 Business-to-Business (B2B) Features

Oracle iStore 11*i* offers many advantages to the merchant seeking to implement B2B ecommerce. Special Oracle iStore 11*i* B2B features include the following:

- User and role management for B2B users
- Party restriction by specialty stores
- An enhanced checkout process that allows creation of shipping and billing addresses and contacts, creation of new customers, application of specific pricing agreements, and attachment of files

1.4.1 B2B User Registration

Customers can register in your Web stores as B2B users to access the B2B features. B2B users are representatives of a customer organization. All purchases by B2B users will be assigned to their organizations' accounts. If their organization does not have an account yet, an account is created for it in the Oracle applications when they register as B2B users.

If they know their organization's ID, they can also register as a B2B user specifically for that organization.

When B2B customers register in the Web store, the Oracle iStore 11*i* system administrator must approve their user registration before they can access B2B features and make purchases.

Figure 1-1 The B2B User Registration Screen

ORACLE iStore

Shopping Cart My Account Order Tracker Help

Home Books Music Electronics Computers

Quick Search All Products [Advanced Search](#)

Business User Registration

Business Information

Existing Organization

* Existing Organization Number

New Organization

* Organization

* Address

* City

* State * Zip

* Country

User Information

* First Name

Middle Name

* Last Name

* Email

In addition to Order Status Alerts, I would like to receive important information on exclusive Store specials, promotions and events.

Daytime Phone Number () Ext.

Evening Phone Number () Ext.

Fax Number () Ext.

* Username

* Password

* Confirm Password

* Required fields

1.4.2 B2B User and Role Management

When customers register as B2B users through the Web stores, you can assign them specific B2B roles that determine the permissions they have in the Web stores. You can use the seeded Oracle iStore 11i roles or create new B2B roles with various combinations of the Oracle iStore 11i B2B permissions.

If you give a B2B user a role with the IBE_USER_ADMIN permission, the B2B user can create more users for his or her organization in the Web store without the Oracle iStore 11i system administrator's approval. A B2B user with the IBE_USER_ADMIN permission can also assign B2B roles to the users he or she creates, and define new B2B user roles with unique sets of permissions.

If a customer directly requests a Web store user name for an organization account that already exists, instead of going through the organization's B2B administrative user(s), the Oracle iStore 11i system administrator needs to approve the user.

See [Section 3.3, "Setting Up B2B Users"](#) for more information.

1.4.3 Restricting Specialty Stores by Organization

Oracle iStore 11i allows you to choose the organizations that can access each of your specialty stores, either by including them specifically or excluding them specifically. This enables you to set up specialty stores that are targeted toward certain business customers. You can also set up specific specialty stores for certain organizations and exclude them from other specialty stores. You can create specialty stores that have no access restrictions as well.

A specialty store that limits access according to organization is by definition a B2B-only store and automatically excludes walk-in customers. If an anonymous customer comes to this site, he or she will see a login screen that only allows registration as a B2B user. If a customer logs in to a specialty store as a B2B user for an organization that is not allowed in the store, he or she is denied further access to the store.

1.4.4 The B2B User's Shopping Cart

B2B customers have several options in their shopping carts to improve the level of service they receive, depending on the permissions that you assign to them. The Oracle iStore 11i default B2B user role is seeded with permissions to choose ship-to and bill-to contact addresses. You can also grant the permissions to the B2B user role to create and change ship-to and bill-to customers, contacts, and addresses, to choose pricing agreements, and to attach files to the shopping cart.

Customers and contacts are normally created through processes in Oracle Sales Online, Oracle TeleSales, or Oracle Receivables. The Oracle iStore 11i functions for creating customers and contacts enter only the minimum information necessary to place an order.

Shipping Details

All customers can create and change their own ship-to addresses. B2B customers with the requisite permissions can also create and change ship-to customers and contacts, and create and change addresses for these customers and contacts. B2B customers can choose ship-to customers, contacts, and addresses for both header level and item level shipping information.

You can also determine whether a B2B user can search for all existing customers in your records or only those with an existing ship-to relationship with the B2B user.

Billing Details

All customers can create and change their own bill-to addresses. B2B customers with the requisite permissions can also create and change bill-to customers and contacts, and create and change addresses for these customers and contacts.

You can also determine whether a B2B user can search for all existing customers in your records or only those with an existing bill-to relationship with the B2B user.

Pricing Agreements

You can give B2B users the permission to apply pricing agreements. If you do so, their user interface will have a screen where they have the option to choose which pricing agreements they want to use to price their orders.

Pricing agreements are set up in Oracle Order Management or Oracle Pricing. You can create both universal pricing agreements and customer-specific pricing agreements. If a B2B user has the permission to apply pricing agreements, the pricing agreement selection page will return all universal pricing agreements and any pricing agreements that are specific to the B2B user's organization. Here, the B2B user can choose which pricing agreement to apply to his or her shopping cart.

Attachments

B2B customers can browse their file systems and attach various types of files to the shopping cart, if they have the permission to do so. Attachments may be used for various purposes, depending on the requirements and processes of your business and your customer organizations.

1.5 The Oracle iStore 11i Shopping Cart

The Oracle iStore 11i shopping cart allows B2B and B2C customers to perform an Available to Promise (ATP) Check for products and apply promotion codes. They can also request sales assistance from their shopping carts. [Section 1.4.4, "The B2B User's Shopping Cart"](#) describes the additional features that the Oracle iStore 11i shopping cart offers to B2B customers.

Available to Promise (ATP) Check

Oracle iStore 11i Web store customers can check for product availability according to the quantity ordered and the date needed, using ATP Check. The Regular ATP Check retrieves item availability information from Oracle Inventory, while the Global ATP Check also requires Oracle Advanced Supply Chain Planning and Oracle Material Requirements Planning.

For each specialty store, you can decide whether or not to allow ATP Check by setting their ATP Enabled flags in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI. See [Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#) for instructions.

See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information about setting up other Oracle application modules to provide ATP Check in Oracle iStore 11i.

Promotion Codes

Oracle iStore 11i Web store customers can enter promotion codes (also known as "offer codes") to capture automatic discounts set up in the Oracle Pricing engine as available to request. They access this feature by clicking a Promotion Codes button (for B2C customers) or link (for B2B customers) in the shopping cart.

See *Oracle Pricing User's Guide* and *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information about setting up promotion codes.

Sales Assistance

Web store customers can request help from a sales representative through the Oracle iStore 11i Sales Assistance feature. When they do so, the application asks them to choose from a list of reasons why they need assistance, and to enter any comments they may have. When the customers indicate why they need assistance, the application submits their shopping carts as orders with an Entered status, and the sales representative specified in the profile option IBE: Default Sales Assistant to Send Workflow Notification receives an e-mail notification. The sales representative can then contact the customer, provide the necessary assistance, and book the order.

See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information about how to set up the Sales Assistance feature.

1.6 Access Control

You can control users' access to Oracle iStore 11*i* specialty stores through setting the stores up to check the user responsibility, restrict access by the user's party, and prevent walk-in users. You can use these three types of access control together or separately to manage users' ability to enter your Web stores.

This topic addresses how the access control types interact to give you control over who can access your Web stores. See [Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#) for instructions on how to set up these access controls in your specialty stores.

1.6.1 Users

Users may be anonymous or registered.

An anonymous user may be an unregistered user or a guest user. An anonymous user may be a first-time visitor or a returning user. A registered user that Oracle iStore 11*i* does not recognize is also an anonymous user. Registered users, created by the Oracle iStore 11*i* system administrator or by their primary user, who are arriving for the first time are also considered anonymous users.

A registered user is an FND_USER who is recognized as such via his or her cookie.

1.6.2 Specialty Stores and Responsibilities

The Customer UI presents a list of user-friendly names that each represent a specialty store-responsibility combination. From this list, users can choose the specialty store that they will enter and the responsibility that they will use for the session.

One or more responsibilities may be assigned to users in their profiles. However, in a session, a user must be associated with one unique responsibility. The specific responsibility assigned for a given session is the one that the user chooses in the specialty store-responsibility combination list of values (LOV). If a specialty store is not set up to check user responsibility, the responsibilities assigned to the users in their profiles are irrelevant.

However, if a specialty store is set up to check user responsibility, Oracle iStore 11*i* first determines the intersection between the responsibilities in the user's profile and the responsibilities supported by that specialty store. For a registered user,

Oracle iStore 11i accesses the user's profile to determine assigned responsibilities. For an anonymous user, the default responsibility is used. The default responsibility is specified in the JTF: DEFAULT RESPONSIBILITY profile option at the iStore (IBE) application level. The seeded value of this profile option at the iStore application level is IBE_CUSTOMER. However, if users enter Oracle iStore 11i from another application, they will have the responsibility specified in the JTF: DEFAULT RESPONSIBILITY profile option for that application.

Oracle iStore 11i generates the Customer UI specialty store-responsibility combination LOV for each user according to the following rules:

1. Include all specialty store-responsibility combinations defined in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI for the current application. For example, if the user is accessing Oracle iStore 11i directly as a Web storefront, the current application is Oracle iStore 11i, and only iStore responsibilities should be included. On the other hand, if the user is accessing Oracle iStore 11i as a quoting tool through Oracle Sales Online, the current application is Oracle Sales Online, and only Oracle Sales Online responsibilities should be included in the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.
2. For every specialty store set up to check the user's responsibility, exclude those specialty store-responsibility combinations containing responsibilities that are not associated with the user.
3. If access to a specialty store is restricted by party of type organization, exclude all specialty store-responsibility combinations containing specialty stores to which the user's party does not have access.
4. If the user has the responsibility IBE_ADMINISTRATOR, all specialty store-responsibility combinations are included in the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

1.6.3 Direct Access

It is also possible that a user tries to access a specialty store directly by typing in the URL and circumventing the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV. This URL has a reference to a specialty store and a responsibility. Oracle iStore 11i treats such users as described in the following scenarios:

Scenario 1

The store does not check responsibility access or have party restrictions.

Anonymous User If the responsibility specified in the URL is supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to the specialty store and assigns the responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, and this specialty store supports only one other responsibility, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to the specialty store and assigns the other responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, but this specialty store supports multiple other responsibilities, Oracle iStore 11i displays the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV for this particular specialty store only. When the user chooses from this LOV, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to this specialty store and assigns the chosen responsibility for the session.

If no responsibilities are supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11i redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

If the store does not allow walk-in users, Oracle iStore 11i displays the login and registration page after it grants the user access to the specialty store.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11i follows the same procedures for registered users that it follows for anonymous users. However, the setting of the walk-in user flag is irrelevant for registered users.

Scenario 2

The store does not check responsibility access. The store excludes only certain parties.

Anonymous User Oracle iStore 11i follows the same procedures that it follows for the anonymous user in a store that does not check responsibility access or have party restrictions ([Scenario 1](#)), unless the store does not allow walk-in users.

If the store does not allow walk-in users, Oracle iStore 11i displays the login and registration page after it grants the user access to the specialty store. When users log in, if they are identified as being associated with an organization excluded from the specialty store, Oracle iStore 11i redirects them to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

If the store does allow walk-in users, this identification takes place later in the session. For example, if the users arrive anonymously, they must log in while proceeding to checkout. At this time, if they are identified as being associated with an organization excluded from the specialty store, Oracle iStore 11i redirects them immediately to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11i follows the same procedures that it follows for the registered user in a store that does not check responsibility access or have party restrictions ([Scenario 1](#)), unless the user is associated with an organization excluded from the specialty store specified in the URL. In this case, Oracle iStore 11i redirects them to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Scenario 3

The store does not check responsibility access. The store includes only certain parties.

Anonymous User Oracle iStore 11i displays the login and registration page. When the users log in, if they are identified as being associated with an organization that is included in the specialty store specified in the URL, and the responsibility specified in the URL is supported by this specialty store, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to this specialty store and assigns the responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, and this specialty store supports only one other responsibility, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to this specialty store and assigns the other responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, but this specialty store supports multiple other responsibilities, Oracle iStore 11i displays the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV for this particular specialty store only. When the user chooses from this LOV, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to this specialty store and assigns the chosen responsibility for the session.

If no responsibilities are supported by the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11i redirects the users to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

If the user logs in and is identified as being associated with an organization that is not included in the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11i redirects them to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Only B2B registration is allowed in a specialty store that includes only certain parties. If the user registers as a representative of an organization that is not included in the specialty store, Oracle iStore 11i redirects him or her to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

The walk-in user flag is irrelevant for a store that only includes certain parties, because the store only allows logged in B2B users.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11i follows the same procedures for registered users that it follows for anonymous users.

Scenario 4

The store checks responsibility access. The store does not have party restrictions.

Anonymous User Oracle iStore 11i determines the intersection between the responsibilities associated with the users in their user profiles, and the responsibilities supported by the specialty store specified in the URL. If the responsibility specified in the URL is present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to the specialty store specified in the URL and assigns the responsibility specified in the URL for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not present in this intersection, and only one other responsibility is present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11i grants access to the specialty store specified in the URL and assigns the other responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not present in this intersection, but multiple other responsibilities are present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11i displays the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV for this particular specialty store and responsibilities in the intersection only. The user can choose from this LOV. Oracle iStore 11i then grants access to this specialty store and assigns the chosen responsibility for the session. If the store does not allow walk-in users, and the user is anonymous, Oracle iStore 11i displays the login and registration page after it grants access to the specialty store.

If the intersection is null, Oracle iStore 11i displays the login and registration page. If the user logs in, Oracle iStore 11i checks the responsibilities associated with the user and determines the intersection. If this intersection is not null, Oracle iStore 11i executes the logic described above. If this intersection is still null, Oracle iStore 11i redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

If the user registers, Oracle iStore 11i checks the responsibilities associated with the user at registration and determines the intersection. If this intersection is not null,

Oracle iStore 11*i* executes the logic described above. If this intersection is still null, Oracle iStore 11*i* redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11*i* follows the same procedures for registered users after they log in that it follows for anonymous users.

Scenario 5

The store checks responsibility access. The store excludes only certain parties.

Anonymous User Oracle iStore 11*i* follows the same procedures that it follows for the anonymous user in a store that checks responsibility access and does not have party restrictions ([Scenario 4](#)). The only exception is that if an anonymous user logs in, and Oracle iStore 11*i* identifies the user as being associated with an organization excluded from the specialty store, then the application redirects user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11*i* follows the same procedures that it follows for the registered user in a store that checks responsibility access and does not have party restrictions ([Scenario 4](#)). The only exception is that if the user is associated with an organization excluded from the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11*i* redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Scenario 6

The store checks responsibility access. The store includes only certain parties.

Anonymous User Oracle iStore 11*i* displays the login and registration page. If the user logs in, and is associated with an organization included in the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11*i* determines the intersection between the responsibilities associated with the user in his or her user profile, and the responsibilities supported by the specialty store specified in the URL. If the responsibility specified in the URL is present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11*i* grants access to the specialty store specified in the URL and assigns the responsibility specified in the URL for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not present in this intersection, and only one other responsibility is present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11*i* grants access to the specialty store specified in the URL and assigns the other responsibility for the session.

If the responsibility specified in the URL is not present in this intersection, but multiple other responsibilities are present in this intersection, Oracle iStore 11i displays the specialty store-responsibility combination LOV for this particular specialty store and responsibilities in the intersection only. The user can choose from this LOV. Oracle iStore 11i then grants access to this specialty store and assigns the chosen responsibility for the session.

If the intersection is null, Oracle iStore 11i redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

If the user logs in, and is identified as being associated with an organization that is not included in the specialty store specified in the URL, Oracle iStore 11i redirects the user to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

Only B2B registration is allowed in a specialty store that includes only certain parties. If the user registers as a representative of an organization that is not included in the specialty store, Oracle iStore 11i redirects him or her to the main specialty store-responsibility combination LOV.

The walk-in user flag is irrelevant for a store that only includes certain parties, because the store only allows logged in B2B users.

Registered User Oracle iStore 11i follows the same procedures for registered users after they log in that it follows for anonymous users.

1.7 Globalization

Oracle iStore 11i functionality supports the implementation of a global store in a single instance. Each specialty store can support multiple languages and currencies. All templates and multimedia components can be specified for each specialty store and language combination. Messages, alerts, and short and long inventory descriptions can be specified by language. Oracle iStore 11i captures and renders these various associations as it dynamically renders the Web storefront.

Every registered Web store customer has a preferred language and currency associated in his or her user profile. The Web store customer can change the preferred language or currency by modifying his or her account profile.

Globalization is supported in an environment with multiple business units or organizations.

Globalization depends on setups for your organizations in Oracle Human Resources. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information about setting up Oracle Human Resources to work with Oracle iStore 11i.

1.8 Relationship of Oracle iStore 11i to Other Oracle Applications

Oracle iStore 11i depends upon the following modules, which may in turn be dependent on other modules:

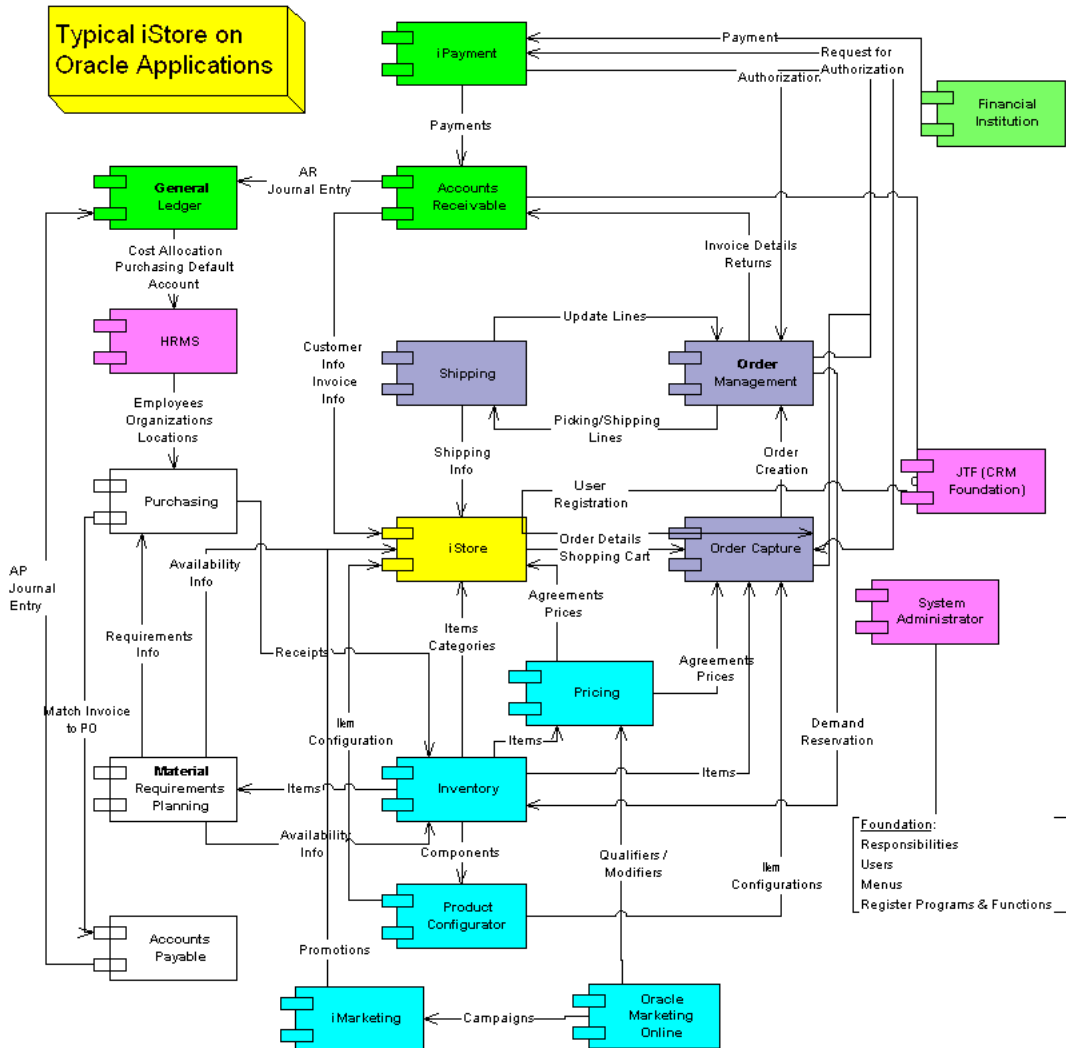
- **Oracle Application Object Library (AOL)** to manage responsibilities of store managers and customers, to define new languages, and to manage Web storefront prompts
- **Oracle General Ledger** to provide business unit information
- **Oracle Human Resources** to store information related to your organizations, such as permitted bill-to and ship-to countries
- **Oracle Inventory** to provide product information
- **Oracle Order Capture** to capture the customer's order from the shopping cart
- **Oracle Order Management** to process the orders and provide order tracking, returns, and history
- **Oracle Pricing** to provide complex, customer-specific pricing
- **Oracle Receivables** to act as a central data repository for customer information by using the Trading Community Architecture (TCA) model, as well as to calculate taxes and generate invoices

Integration with other Oracle products extends the functionality of your store. Oracle iStore 11i integrates with the following applications:

- **Oracle Advanced Inbound** to process call-me-back requests
- **Oracle Advanced Supply Chain (Global ATP Server)** to provide product availability information
- **Oracle Configurator** to enable customer configured products and provide guided selling as well as to perform some of the validations of the shopping cart
- **Oracle Contracts** for complete contract management and service agreements
- **Oracle CRM Business Intelligence** to assess the performance of the store
- **Oracle iMarketing** to define promotions and discounts
- **Oracle Incentive Compensation** for managing sales compensation across all channels
- **Oracle iPayment** to process payments with online credit card authorization

- **Oracle iSupport** to provide return authorizations and knowledge base integration
- **Oracle Marketing Online** to define, execute, and manage marketing campaigns, budgets, and segments across all channels
- **Oracle Material Requirements Planning** to provide product availability information
- **Oracle Shipping** to calculate shipping charges
- **Oracle Workflow** to send e-mail notifications and confirmations to customers

Figure 1-2 Typical Oracle iStore 11i Integration With Other Oracle Applications



1.9 Roles and Responsibilities in Oracle Applications

User roles and responsibilities are set up in Oracle Applications to secure access to the data and functionality within the applications. The key element in Oracle Applications security is the definition of a responsibility. A responsibility defines:

- Application database privileges
- An application's functionality that is accessible
- The concurrent programs and reports that are available

The system administrator defines application users and assigns one or more responsibilities to each user. In the Oracle iStore 11i context, the system administrator may be you or another person.

See *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide* and *Oracle Applications User's Guide* for more information on how to set up roles and responsibilities.

1.9.1 Defining Application Users

The system administrator allows a new user to log in to Oracle Applications by defining an application user. An application user has a user name and a password. The system administrator defines an initial password. Then the first time the application user logs in, he or she must enter a new (secret) password.

When the system administrator defines an application user, he or she assigns to the user one or more responsibilities. If the system administrator assigns only one responsibility, the user, after logging in, immediately enters an application. If the system administrator assign two or more responsibilities, the user, after logging in, sees a window listing available responsibilities.

1.9.2 Responsibilities Define Application Privileges

A responsibility is a level of authority in Oracle Applications that lets users access only those Oracle Applications functions and data that are appropriate to their roles in an organization. Each responsibility allows access to:

- A specific application or applications, such as Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Planning.
- A set of books, such as U.S. Operations or German Sales, or an organization, such as New York Manufacturing or New York Distribution.

- A restricted list of windows that a user can navigate to; for example, a responsibility may allow certain Oracle Planning users to enter forecast items, but not enter master demand schedule items.
- A restricted list of functions a user can perform. For example, two responsibilities may have access to the same window, but one responsibility's window may have additional function buttons that the other responsibility's window does not have.
- Reports in a specific application; the system administrator can assign groups of reports to one or more responsibilities, so the responsibility a user chooses determines the reports that can be submitted.

Each user has at least one responsibility, and several users can share the same responsibility. A system administrator can assign users any of the standard responsibilities provided with Oracle Applications, or create new custom responsibilities.

1.9.3 Defining a Responsibility

When a system administrator defines a responsibility, he or she assigns to it some or all of the components described below:

- **A Data Group** (required) defines the mapping between Oracle Applications products and ORACLE IDs. A Data Group determines to which Oracle database accounts a responsibility's forms, concurrent programs, and reports connect.
- **A request security group** (optional) defines the concurrent programs, including requests and request sets, that may be run by an application user under a particular responsibility.
- **A menu** (required) is a hierarchical arrangement of application functions (forms) that displays in the Navigate window. Menus can also point to non-form functions (subfunctions) that do not display in the Navigate window, but that define the range of application functionality available for a responsibility. Each responsibility is associated with a menu.
- **Function and menu exclusion rules** (optional) associated with a responsibility restrict the application functionality enabled for that responsibility.

1.9.4 Predefined Responsibilities

All Oracle Applications products are installed with predefined responsibilities. Consult the reference guide for your Oracle Applications product for the names of those predefined responsibilities. Additionally, instances of the major components that help define a responsibility (data groups, request security groups, menus, and functions) are predefined for Oracle Applications.

1.9.5 Responsibilities and Request Security Groups

When a request group is assigned to a responsibility, it becomes a request security group.

From a standard submission form, such as the Submit Requests form, users can run only the reports, concurrent programs, and request sets that are in their responsibility's request security group.

- If you do not include the Submit Requests form on the menu for a responsibility, then you do not need to assign a request security group to the responsibility.
- If a request security group is not assigned to a responsibility, then users working under that responsibility cannot run any reports, request sets, or other concurrent programs from a standard submission form.

1.9.6 Responsibilities and Function Security

Oracle Applications GUI-based architecture aggregates several related business functions into a single form. Parts of an application's functionality may be identified as individual Oracle Applications functions, which can then be secured (i.e., included or excluded from a responsibility).

1.9.7 User Roles and Responsibilities

In Oracle iStore 11*i*, all users are also assigned responsibilities, which customize their Web store experience. At least one responsibility is assigned to each user during user registration.

Oracle iStore 11*i* assigns the seeded IBE_CUSTOMER responsibility by default to anonymous customers who register in a Web store. You can also create and assign other responsibilities.

In a multiple operating unit environment, you need to create a responsibility for each operating unit. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information on setting up the responsibility-operating unit relationships.

In the Merchant UI, you can specify a list of the customer responsibilities that are supported by a given specialty store. You can select these from all existing responsibilities. You can also specify for a given specialty store whether Oracle iStore 11i checks the user's responsibilities and grants access only if the user has an assigned responsibility that is supported by the specialty store.

If multiple responsibilities are supported by a specialty store, a user who enters the store must choose one responsibility for that session. The responsibility uniquely identifies the operating unit against which any orders placed during the session will be booked. The responsibility also identifies the values of the profile options set at the responsibility level.

If you set up a specialty store to check the customer's responsibility, the customer can choose only from the responsibilities that have been assigned to him or her. If the specialty store is not set up to check the customer's responsibility, then the customer can choose any of the supported responsibilities.

1.10 Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts

The product catalog in Oracle iStore 11i is created against one inventory organization of Oracle Inventory, which you need to identify during the setup operation. You typically use the Master Inventory Organization. Merchants create items using Oracle Inventory form screens, and can choose only items marked as WEB_PUBLISHABLE for use with Oracle iStore 11i. After item creation, the merchants then use the Store Manager to perform the following tasks:

- Provide or update the short and long descriptions. The short description serves as the name of the product, and the long description provides detail about the product for the customer. You may provide the descriptions while creating the items.
- Assign the product to the hierarchy and relative order in which it should appear, and effective dates.
- Describe the product display specifications for different locations on the Customer UI.
- Provide additional content in the form of media files. Users have the option of creating unlimited multimedia components during setup. The user can provide

multimedia components of various types, such as “small image” and “large image.”

- Define or review the related items for different relationships.
- Restrict the product to appear in only certain specialty stores.
- Publish the product.

To provide richer information to customers or facilitate the cross-sell or up-sell functionality, the merchant can specify different types of relationships between products. Oracle iStore 11i specialty store developers can determine their own relationships (for example, substitute, cross-sell, up-sell), and then specify the related items for each relationship. Merchants can also establish rules relating all items in a section or category to all items in another section or category.

1.11 Hierarchy Key Points and Concepts

The Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy facilitates customers’ browsing. Oracle iStore 11i store managers can arrange their products in a hierarchy of sections. Each section has a translatable name, a section identifier (section code), and associated content descriptions.

You can classify sections as navigational or your own definable types. For example, section type in Oracle iStore 11i has been seeded with the FEATURED and NAVIGATIONAL values. The navigational sections serve as the tree that the customers navigate when browsing. The non-navigational sections organize products for highlighting at any level. Each section has two display parameters: the template that displays that section, and the style that displays products in that section. The display style determines the template that will be used.

If you want to indicate if a particular section and its descendants should appear in a specialty store, then select it as the root node for that specialty store. Normally, customers in a specialty store see all descendants of the root node, unless a section or product has been excluded from the specialty store.

Note: In the Customer UI for Oracle iStore 11*i*, the specialty stores' root sections are treated as virtual roots. The current specialty store's root section will not appear in the menu tabs or the navigational hierarchy of the Customer UI. The store's home page will display the first navigational subsection under the root section, not the root section page itself. To present featured sections on the specialty store's home page, make them subsections of this navigational subsection.

Certain programmatic advanced features exist for the Oracle iStore 11*i* developer. Instead of manually assigning products to a hierarchy, developers can write an auto-placement rule (WHEREBY clause of a SQL query) to assign items automatically to sections. Whenever an item is created or changes in the underlying inventory tables, Oracle iStore 11*i* executes the placement rules that indicate the location of the added item. Oracle iStore 11*i* also supports the addition of a SQL query that determines the relationship of an item to a set of related items.

1.12 Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts

All multimedia and template files possess the following features:

- Name
- Programmatic access name
- Set of source files for foreign language and specialty stores
- Description and keywords

Template developers can access the multimedia file directly by referencing its programmatic access name, or by referring to the multimedia file associated with a product or section. In the second scenario, a template developer would ask for the particular multimedia component of a given product or section, for example the "Section Logo" multimedia of the "Book" section.

When setting up Oracle iStore 11*i*, you can indicate template affiliations for presenting sections, products, or other objects such as the shopping cart.

Display a section by using the section's own template. If different sections require different layouts, then indicate the template for use at the section level. Also at the section level, specify a display style for displaying products in that section. Template developers do not need to hard code the display style in each template for

the section. This feature and method allow template developers to focus on presentation rather than coding logic into the JSP pages.

Typically products are displayed differently depending on their location and type. Accordingly, Oracle iStore 11*i* provides functionality that supports a merchant definable set of display styles for store products. For each display style, the store creator can indicate which template to use to display a particular product for that display style.

See [Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#) and [Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#) for detailed information.

1.13 Customer User Interface Key Points and Concepts

Oracle iStore 11*i* ships with templates that render the Customer UI and process flow. Templates are JSPs that the template developer can use to call JavaBeans for dynamic data and then present the returned data by embedding it within HTML tags. Oracle iStore 11*i*'s seeded templates generate only HTML, but output can be generated into other formats. In addition to calling Oracle iStore 11*i*'s APIs, template developers can call any other components to get data for inclusion in the final HTML page that is returned to the browser.

1.14 Search Functionality Key Points and Concepts

The Oracle iStore 11*i* application has expanded search functionality. The new functionality for search relates both to the Oracle iStore 11*i* user and merchant.

The Oracle iStore 11*i* user has the following search capabilities:

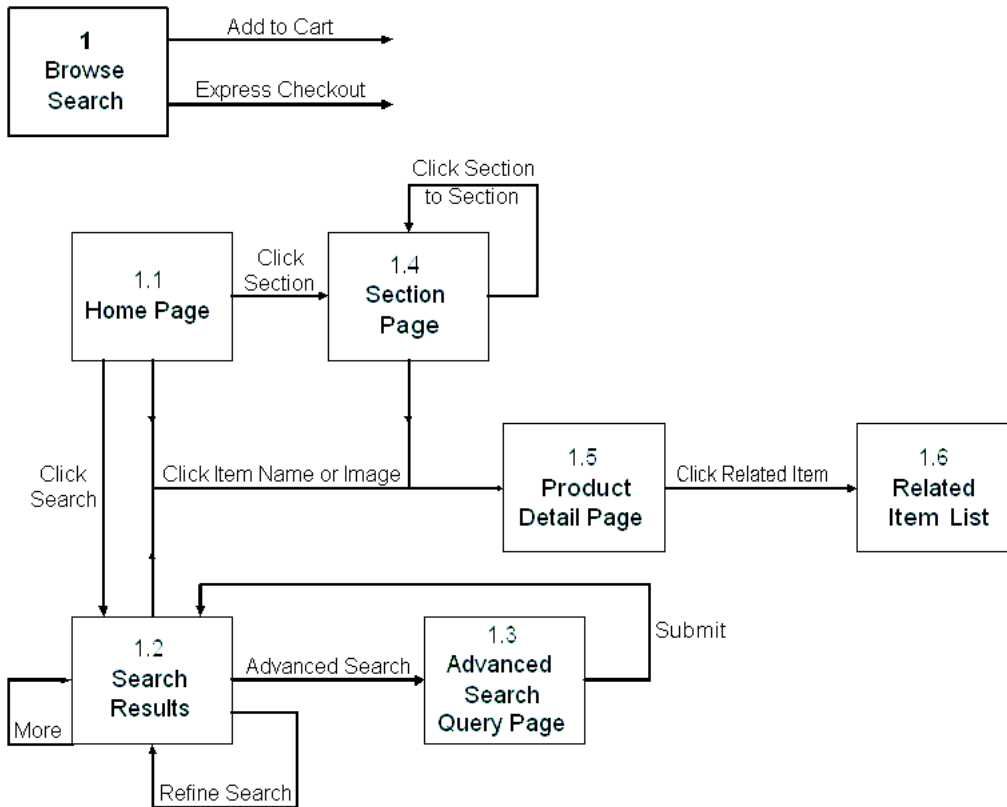
- Quick search by category or section, or across all products
- Quick search by entering keywords
- Advanced search by category or section, or across all products, via the following options:
 - Keyword search
 - Boolean searching using **and/or** qualifiers
 - Excluded keyword search

The Oracle iStore 11*i* merchant has the following configurable options for search functionality:

- Context keyword default—Set up the system so that the Quick search keyword is entered by default. With this functionality the user does not need to enter a contextual value; the application populates the field according to the defaults by category. The search engine uses the following product information to return the products that match the search criteria:
 - Product name
 - Long description
 - Part number
- Product display information—Customize the template to decide which fields of product information to display. (By default, the product name and category are displayed.)
- Search result display number—Limit the number of results that display for a search. You determine the number of search results in total and the number to display per page.
- Search result prioritization—Divide the search results by priority, top matches versus the complete set.

1.15 Business Flows and Templates for Search

The customer enters the store at the home page and searches for information or browses through pages that display section and product information. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



Customers enter the store at the home page (1.1).

Customers conduct a simple search (1.2) to find items of interest.

Customers can also conduct an advanced search (1.3). Add to cart and Express Checkout are not available on this page.

Customers view groupings of products called sections (1.4). In the sample store, one template is used to display all sections.

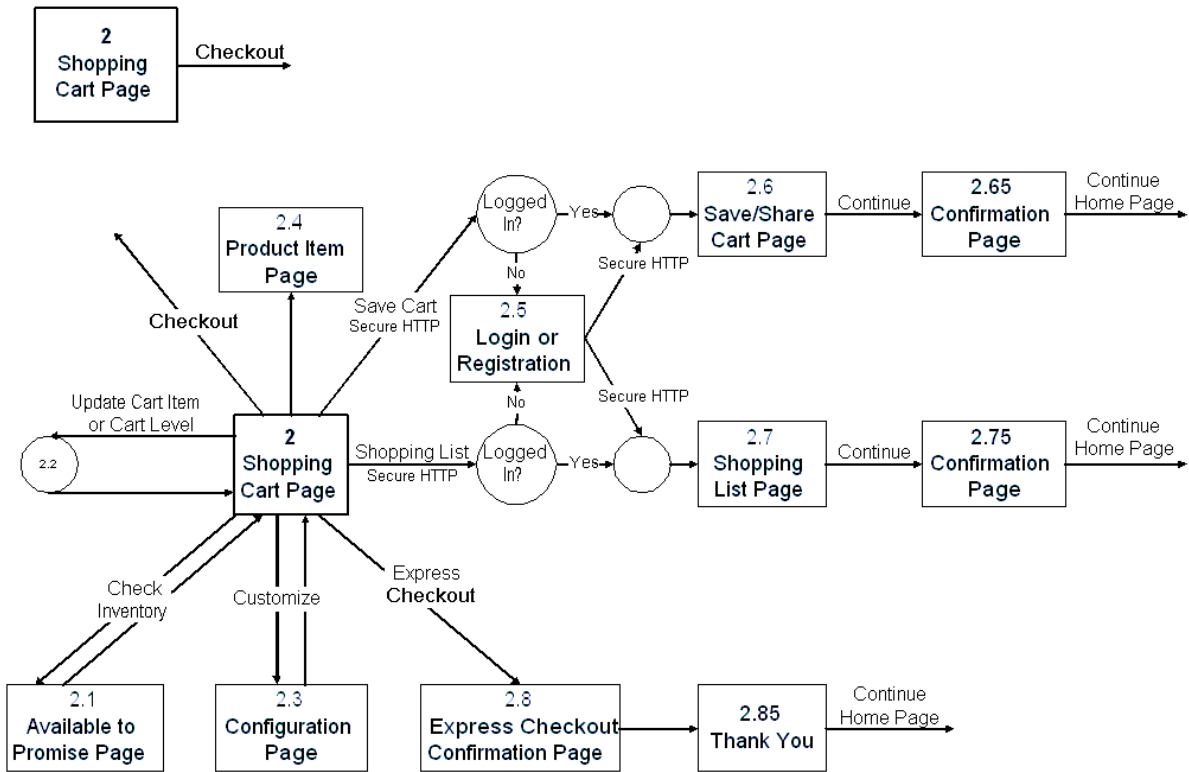
Customers review detailed product information (1.5). Any page that displays a product also links to the product detail page. In the sample store, one display style is used for all product detail pages.

While viewing a product, customers can choose to look at products that relate to the product being viewed (1.6).

Customers can add to cart and perform the Express Checkout from any page.

1.16 Business Flows and Templates for Shopping Cart

While browsing the store, customers add products to their shopping carts. When customers add a product, the shopping cart page appears. Customers can review their selected items and perform other functions such as saving the cart or saving it as a shopping list. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



Customers can save the shopping cart (2.6) for future use. Login or registration (2.5) is required before the cart can be saved, and the store changes to secure mode. Customers are asked to provide a cart name (2.6). They can also elect to share their carts (2.6) by specifying the e-mail addresses of the customers with whom they wish to share the carts. These sharees receive an e-mail with instructions on how to access the shared carts. Customers receive confirmation (2.65) when the cart is saved. Only

one shopping cart can be active at a time. Customers can then choose to continue shopping and are returned to the home page (1.1).

Customers can also choose to save the shopping cart as a shopping list (2.7). Shopping lists can be combined into a single order. Login and registration are required (2.5) before saving a shopping list, and the store changes to secure mode. Customers receive confirmation (2.75) when the shopping list is saved. Customers can then choose to continue shopping and are returned to the home page (1.1).

Customers can click an item description to view detailed item information on the product item page (2.4). They then return to the shopping cart page.

Customers can click Reconfigure to go to the configuration page (2.3) for products that can be customized.

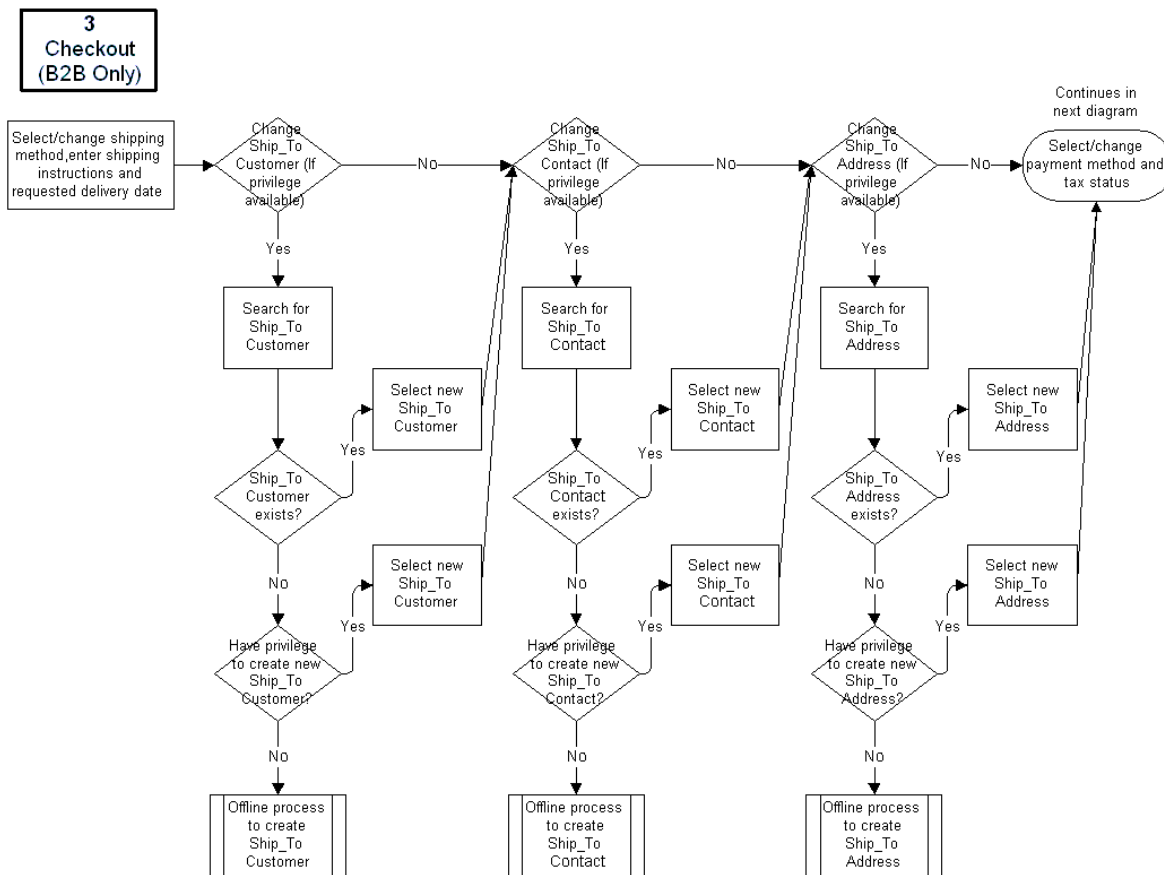
Customers can choose to remove an item, recalculate, or make other changes to the cart. The update is processed (2.2).

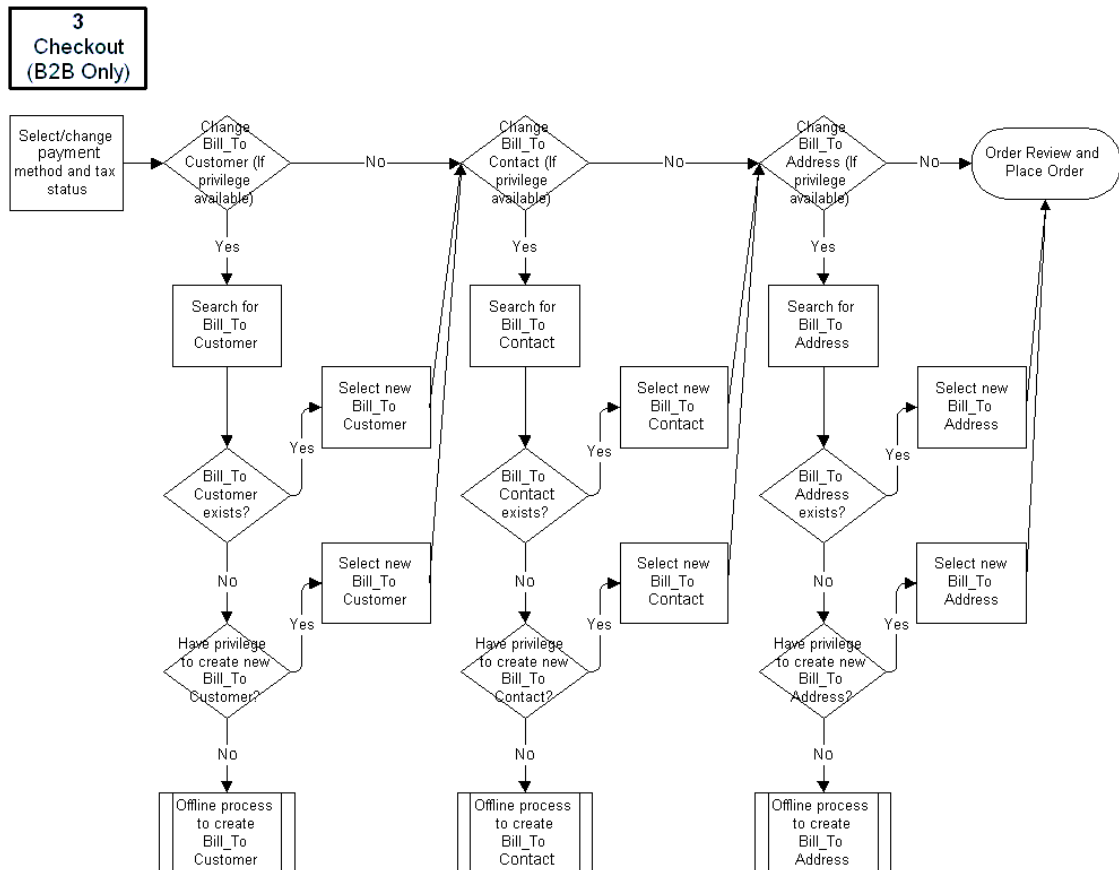
Customers can check inventory for available to promise (2.1) information. They then return to the shopping cart page.

Customers can either go to checkout (3) or perform an Express Checkout. They receive confirmation of the Express Checkout (2.8) and a thank you page (2.85). Then they are returned to the home page.

1.17 Business Flows and Templates for B2B Checkout

B2B customers who are ready to place their orders go to the checkout area of the store, where they enter shipping and payment information. The following diagrams show the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.





When B2B customers proceed to checkout, they first select the shipping method, enter shipping and packing instructions, and specify the requested delivery date.

Next, the B2B customers choose the ship-to customer. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to customer as the ship-to customer. The customers can change the ship-to customer if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the ship-to customer and select the new ship-to customer from the search results. If a record of the ship-to customer does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the ship-to customer's record.

After selecting or creating a ship-to customer, the B2B customers choose the ship-to contact. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to contact as the ship-to contact. The customers can change the ship-to contact if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the ship-to contact and select the new ship-to contact from the search results. If a record of the ship-to contact does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the ship-to contact's record.

After selecting or creating a ship-to contact, the B2B customers choose the ship-to address. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to address as the ship-to address. The customers can change the ship-to address if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the ship-to address and select the new ship-to address from the search results. If a record of the ship-to address does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the ship-to address record.

After selecting or creating a ship-to address, the B2B customers begin the process flow for entering billing details by selecting the payment method and tax status.

Next, the B2B customers choose the bill-to customer. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to customer as the bill-to customer. The customers can change the bill-to customer if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the bill-to customer and select the new bill-to customer from the search results. If a record of the bill-to customer does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the bill-to customer's record.

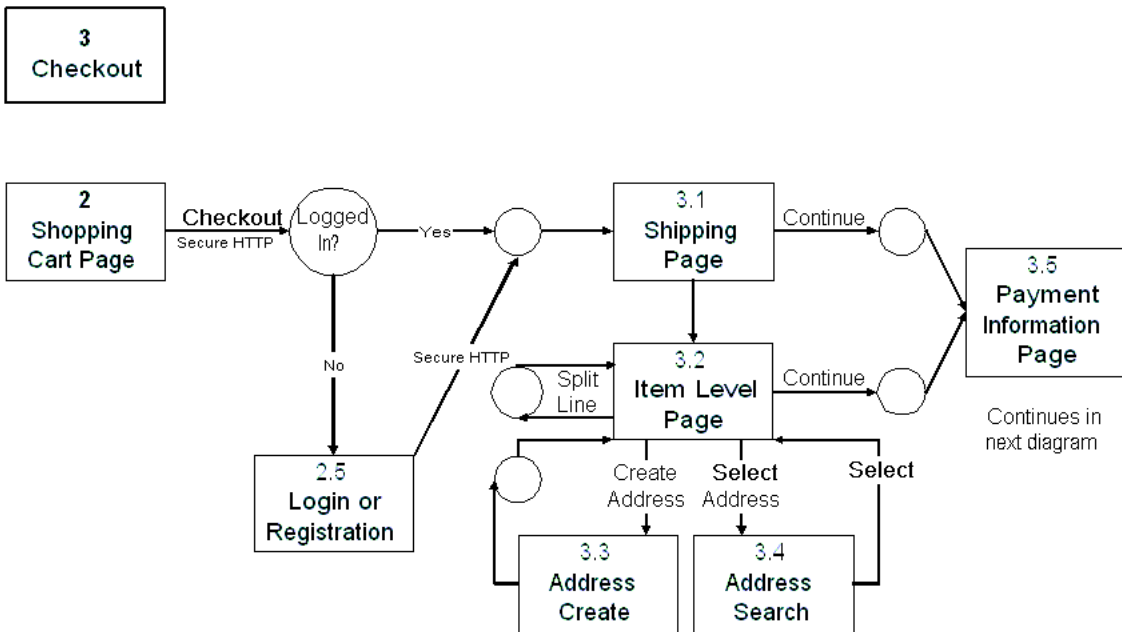
After selecting or creating a bill-to customer, the B2B customers choose the bill-to contact. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to contact as the bill-to contact. The customers can change the bill-to contact if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the bill-to contact and select the new bill-to contact from the search results. If a record of the bill-to contact does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the bill-to contact's record.

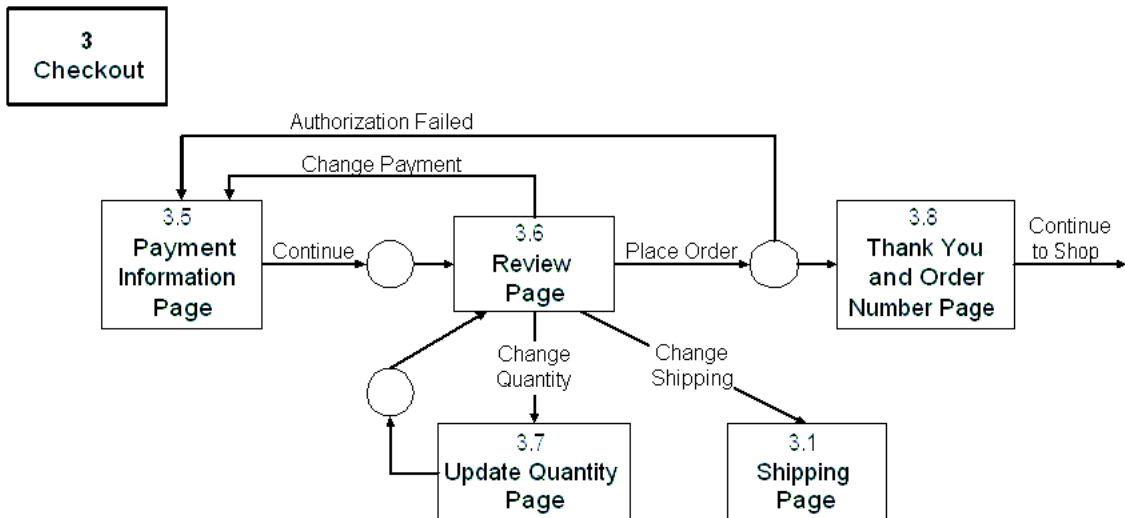
After selecting or creating a bill-to contact, the B2B customers choose the bill-to address. By default, Oracle iStore 11i selects the sold-to address as the bill-to address. The customers can change the bill-to address if they have the requisite permission. They first search for the bill-to address and select the new bill-to address from the search results. If a record of the bill-to address does not exist, they can create a record if they have the requisite permission. If they do not have this permission, there must be an offline process to create the bill-to address record.

After selecting or creating a bill-to address, they review the shopping cart details and place it as an order.

1.18 Business Flows and Templates for B2C Checkout

B2C customers who are ready to place their orders go to the checkout area of the store, where they enter shipping and payment information. The following diagrams show the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.





When a B2C customer chooses to check out, Oracle iStore 11i changes to secure mode and checks to see if the customer is logged in. If not, then the customer goes to log in or register (2.5).

The shipping page appears (3.1). The B2C customer can choose an existing address or add a new address and choose the shipping method and shipping instructions.

B2C customers can choose to set shipping at the item level (3.2). They can select an address, choose the search method (3.4), or add an address to their address books (3.3).

Clicking Continue takes B2C customers to the payment information page (3.5).

B2C customers can choose to attach a file for one or more items (3.9). Clicking Continue returns the customer to the payment information page.

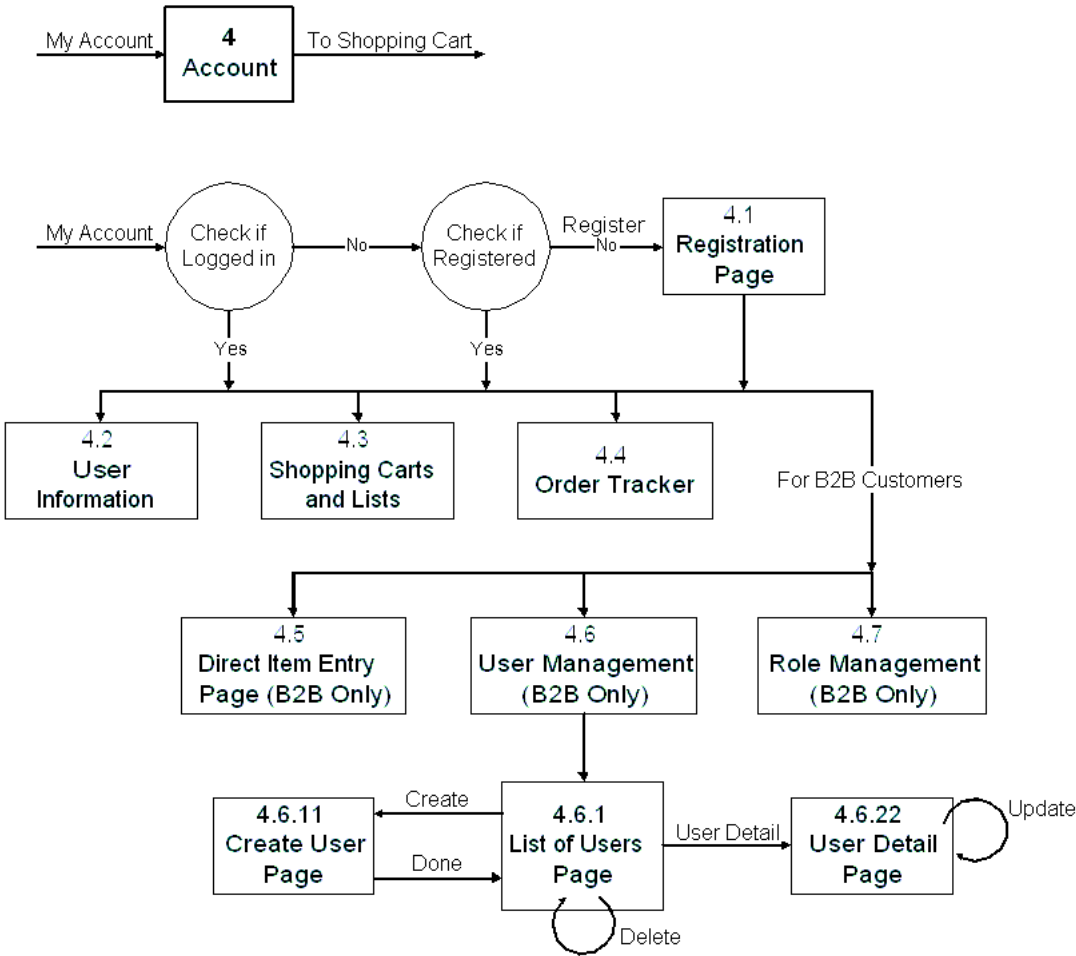
Clicking Continue starts the payment process and takes the B2C customers to the review order details page (3.6).

From the review page, B2C customers can update quantities (3.7), change payment information (3.5), and change shipping information (3.1).

B2C customers click Place Order on the review order details page to process the order and go to an order thank you page (3.8). Customers can then choose to continue to shop and return to the home page.

1.19 Business Flows and Templates for Account

Customers can click My Account from any page to update their user information, check on orders and invoices, work with shopping carts and shopping lists, or directly enter an item to purchase. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



Clicking My Account takes customers to user information (4.2), the personal information page. See [Section 1.20, "Business Flows and Templates for Customer Information"](#) to view the expanded diagram.

Customers choose Carts and Lists (4.3) to use their shopping lists or saved carts. Customers are first taken to the saved carts page. See [Section 1.21, "Business Flows and Templates for Carts and Lists"](#) to view the expanded diagram.

Customers choose Order Tracker (4.4) to go to the order status page, and from there view invoice and payment information. See [Section 1.22, "Business Flows and Templates for Orders and Invoices"](#) to view the expanded diagram.

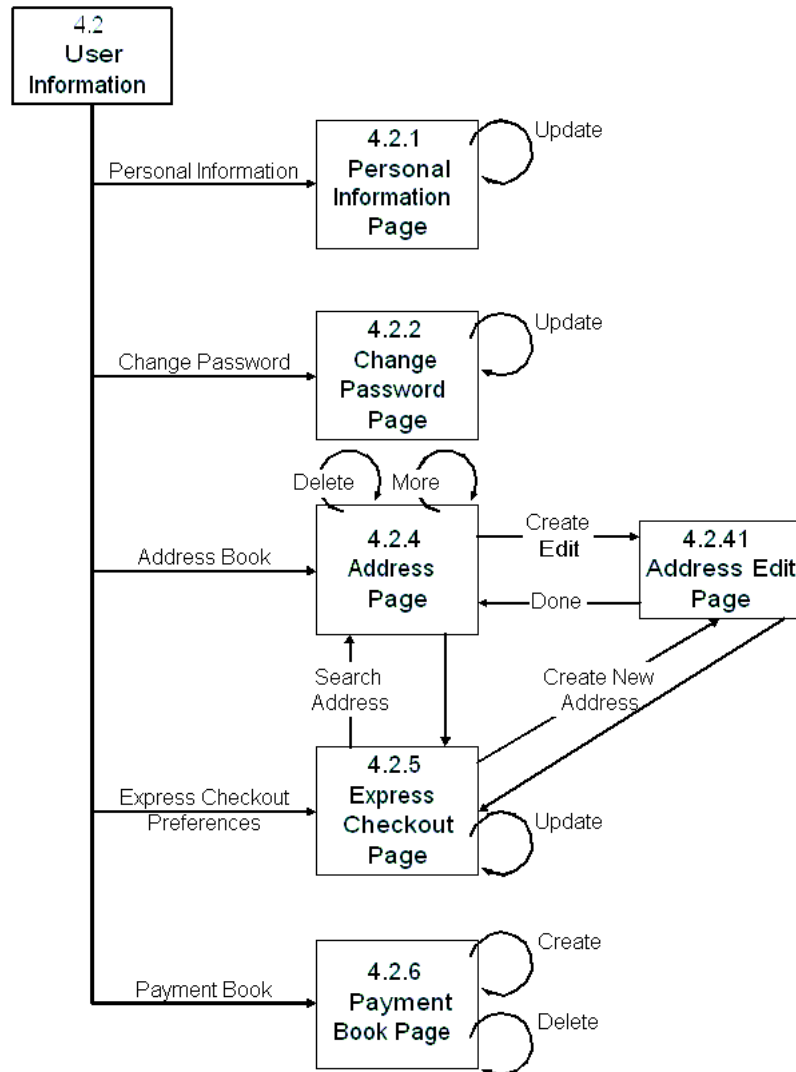
B2B customers can choose Direct Item Entry (4.5) to add items to their shopping carts by customer or merchant part numbers.

B2B customers can choose User Management (4.6) to create and maintain other users for their organizations, who can use your store. They click User Management, which takes them to a list of their users (4.6.1). They can then add new users (4.6.11) and edit the details for a user (4.6.22).

B2B customers can choose Role Management (4.7) to create and maintain roles for assignment to other users in their organizations.

1.20 Business Flows and Templates for Customer Information

Customers manage their own personal, address, and payment information. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



When customers click My Account, the personal information page (4.2.1) appears.

Customers click Change Password to access the change password page (4.2.2). The password must be at least six characters long.

Customers click Addresses to review their billing and shipping addresses (4.2.4).

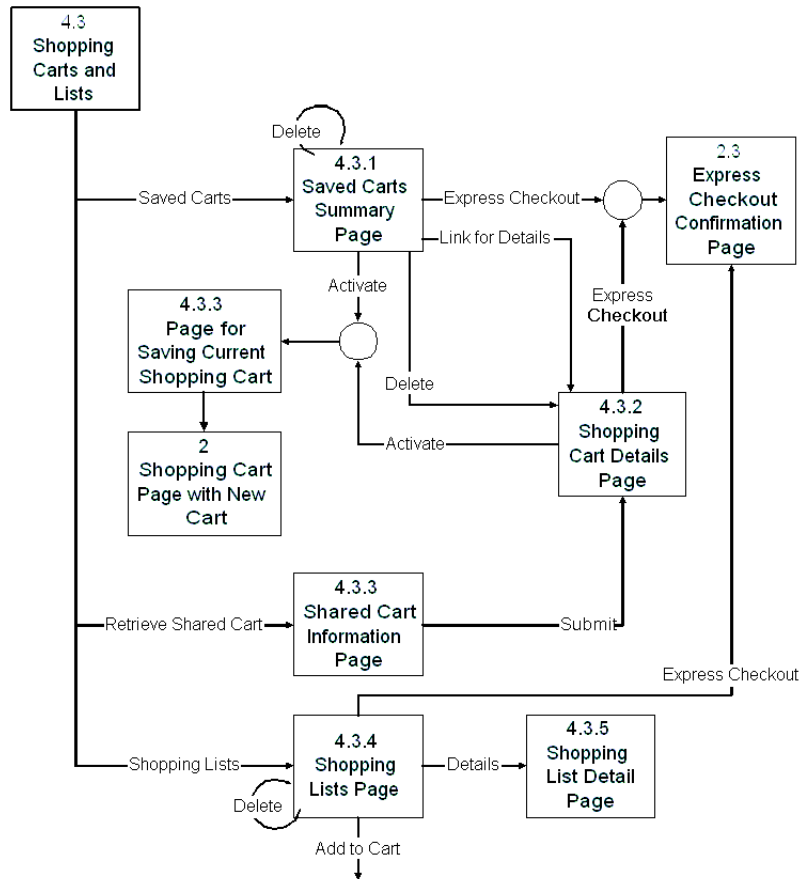
Customers click Edit or Add Address to access the address edit page (4.2.41).

Customers click Payment Books to change payment methods or add to their payment options (4.2.6).

Customers click Express Checkout Preferences (4.2.5) to edit their address (4.2.41), payment, and shipping information to use for Express Checkout.

1.21 Business Flows and Templates for Carts and Lists

Customers use the Carts and Lists section of the store to share carts with others, retrieve saved carts, and use shopping lists. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



Customers choose Carts and Lists and the saved carts summary page (4.3.1) appears.

Customers can activate a saved cart. When they do so, they are asked to save their currently active cart (4.3.3) and are taken to the active shopping cart page (2).

Customers can also click a shopping cart link on the summary page to view the detail information (4.3.2). They can also activate the cart from the detail page.

Customers can choose a cart and click Express Checkout, which takes them to the Express Checkout confirmation page (2.3).

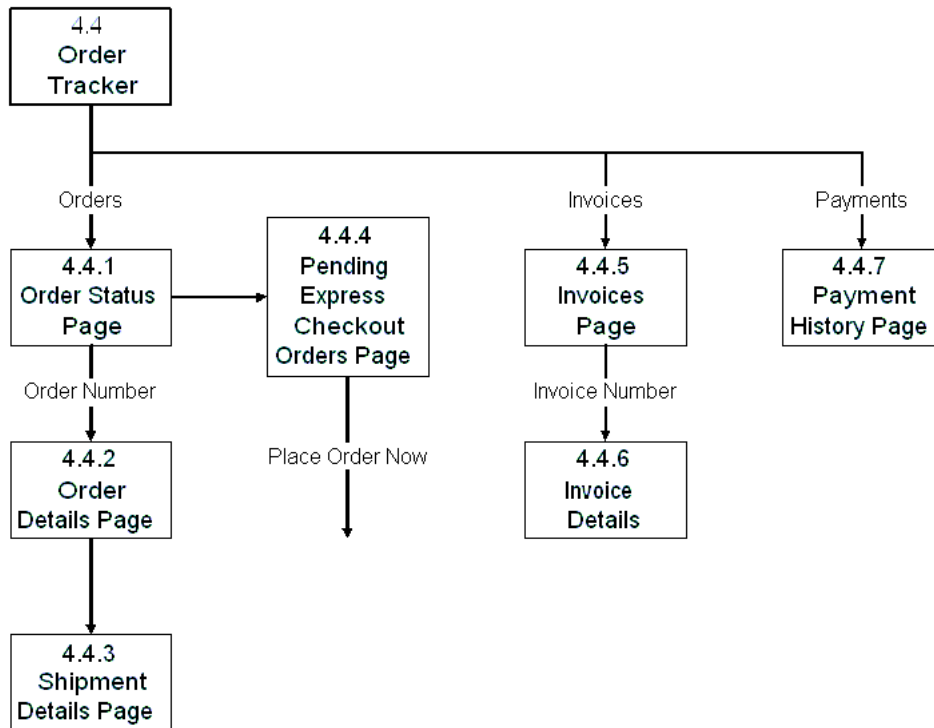
A shopping cart can be shared by one customer with another customer. The receiving customer clicks Retrieve Shared Cart and the retrieve cart information page appears (4.3.3). The customer must enter the cart name and password. Customers can access the shared cart by following the instructions that are automatically e-mailed to them when the cart owner specifies them as sharees.

Customers choose Shopping Lists to view existing shopping lists (4.3.4).

From the shopping list customers can view the details (4.3.5) of a particular shopping list. One or more shopping lists can be added to the active shopping cart or sent directly to Express Checkout to become an order.

1.22 Business Flows and Templates for Orders and Invoices

Customers can review their orders, invoices, and shipping status. The following diagram shows the required flows your templates must follow in this section of the store.



Customers choose Order Tracker and the order status page (4.4.1) displays status information for their outstanding orders.

Customers click an order number to view the order details (4.4.2).

Customers click shipment information to view shipment details (4.4.3).

Customers choose Pending Express Checkout Orders to view a list of Express Checkout orders that they have not yet placed (4.4.4). They can choose to place a selected order.

Customers choose Invoices to view a list of their invoices (4.4.5) with payment and order information.

Customers can click an invoice number anywhere to view the details for an invoice (4.4.6).

Customers choose Payments to view a history of all payments (4.4.7) and how payments have been applied to invoices.

1.23 How the Store Displays Multimedia

Multimedia consist of files used to present content on a Web page to your customer, such as graphics, text, audio, and video. Your Web page can call for multimedia to display in two ways:

- Directly, by using the multimedia name
- Indirectly, by using a multimedia component

1.23.1 Multimedia Called Directly

You assign a multimedia name and a programmatic access name to a multimedia object using the Multimedia tab. You then assign one or more physical media files to combinations of specialty stores and languages. At runtime, for a specific multimedia object, Oracle iStore 11i looks at the display language and displays the files that are assigned to the display language for the specialty store that the customer is in. If no file is specified for the language and specialty store, then the default file for that specialty store and all languages is displayed. If no file is specified for the specialty store and all languages, then the default file for all specialty stores and all languages is displayed. See [Section 2.5, "Customizing Multimedia"](#) for information about how to define multimedia relationships to specialty stores and languages.

1.23.2 Multimedia Called Indirectly

You can also use multimedia components in your templates to reference multimedia objects. See [Section 2.6, "Cataloging Multimedia Components"](#) for information about creating multimedia component names, their related programmatic access names, and assigning a default multimedia object to each multimedia component. Oracle iStore 11i determines what multimedia to display for a multimedia component.

In this case, you assign the multimedia object with a given multimedia component associated with products or sections. Then, when that product or section is displayed (using defaulting rules that are described below), Oracle iStore 11*i* gets the multimedia object that is associated with the multimedia component for the product or section according to the following process.

Example 1 The Product is Displayed

1. If you specified a multimedia object for the multimedia component associated with the product, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the correct file based on the language of the specialty store.
2. If you have not specified a multimedia object at the product level, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the multimedia object for the multimedia component set at the level of the product's primary display category.
3. If you have not specified a multimedia object at the product or category level, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the default multimedia object for the multimedia component set at the store level.

Example 2 The Section is Displayed

1. If you specified a multimedia object for the multimedia component associated with the section, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the correct file based on the language of the specialty store.
2. If no value is specified, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the default multimedia object for the multimedia component set at the store level.

1.24 How the Store Displays Templates

Your Web page can call for templates to display in two ways:

- Directly by using the template name
- Indirectly by using the display style

1.24.1 Templates Called Directly

You assign a template name and a programmatic access name to a template using the Template tab. You then assign one or more physical template files to combinations of specialty stores and languages. At runtime, Oracle iStore 11*i* looks at the customer's language and displays the files that are assigned to the customer's language for the specialty store the customer is in. If no file is specified for the language, then the default file for that specialty store and all languages is displayed.

If no file is specified for the specialty store and all languages, then the default file for all specialty stores and all languages is displayed.

1.24.2 Templates Called Indirectly

You can indicate that the template associated with a given display style will be used when displaying a product. See [Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#) for information on creating your own display styles. You can also indicate at the section level the display style to use for displaying products that belong to that section. Oracle iStore 11*i* uses the following process to determine which template to use when displaying a product according to a given display style.

1. For a given display style, Oracle iStore 11*i* uses the template that you associated with the product.
2. If no template is associated at the product level, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the template associated with the product's primary display category.
3. If no template is associated with the product or category, Oracle iStore 11*i* retrieves the default template for the display style.

1.25 Understanding JSPs

A JavaServer Page (JSP) is a dynamic HTML Web page that embeds Java language methods in the HTML content to generate dynamic content on the Web page. A JSP file includes HTML, Java, JavaScript, and forms.

JSP files consist of the following basic components:

Directives

- Page Directive

```
<%@ page import="hello.NameHandler" %>  
<%@ page info="a hello world example" %>
```

- Include Directive

```
<%@ include file="banner.html" %>
```

Declarations

```
<%!...%>  
    <%! int a, b; double c; %>
```

Expressions

```
<%=...%>
    <%= a + b + c %>
```

Scriptlets

```
<%...%>
    <% String name=null;
    if ( request.getParameter("name") == ) { %>
```

Example 1 foo.jsp

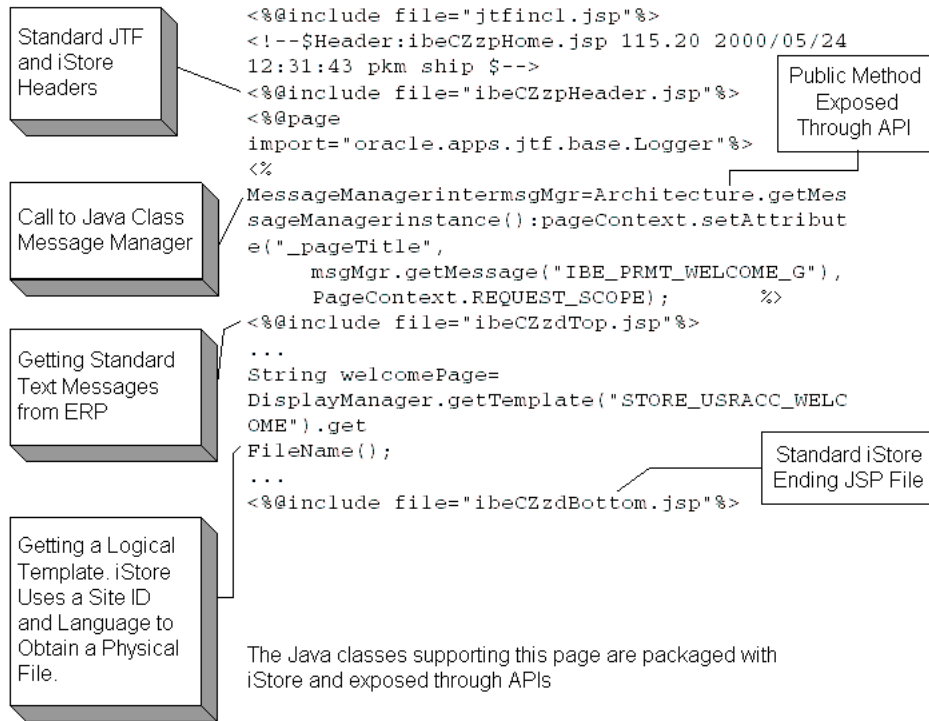
```
<%@ include file="jtfincl.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>
<%@pageContext.setAttribute ("_pageTitle", "Test", pageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
%>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>
Hello World
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdBottom.jsp" %>
```

foo.jsp is accessed from a browser as:

```
http://some.domain.com/html/foo.jsp?minisite=10120
```

The minisite ID is a different number for different installations. After the first session, the minisite parameter is passed along in the cookie.

For an example of a JSP layout, see the following illustration.



1.26 Standard Includes

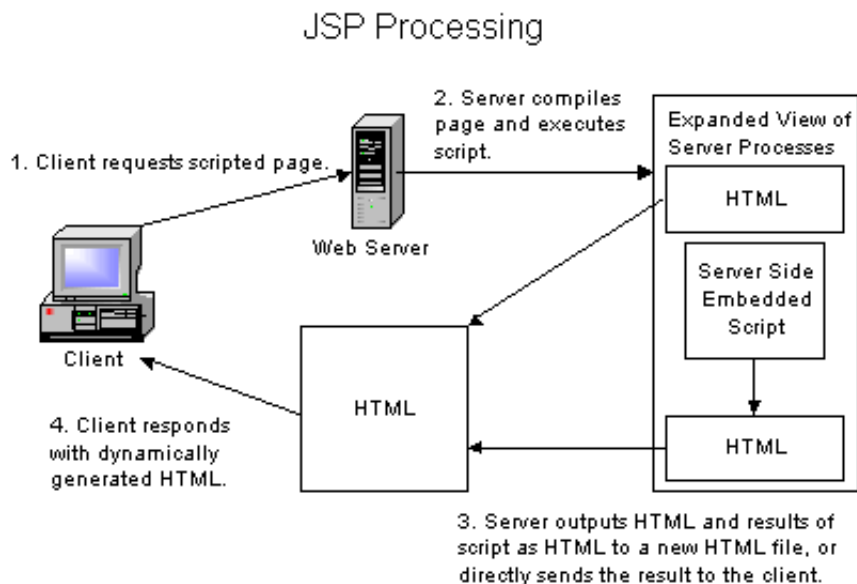
The Oracle iStore 11i standard includes are listed in the following table.

Table 1–1 Standard Includes

JSP	Description
jtfincl.jsp	CRM Foundation standard header
ibeCZzpHeader.jsp	Oracle iStore 11i standard header
ibeCZzdTop.jsp	Prints the top of the page to be generated: <head>, <title>, and so on
ibeCZzdMenu.jsp	Prints the top links, tabs, subtabs and the search bar
ibeCZzdBottom.jsp	Standard footer

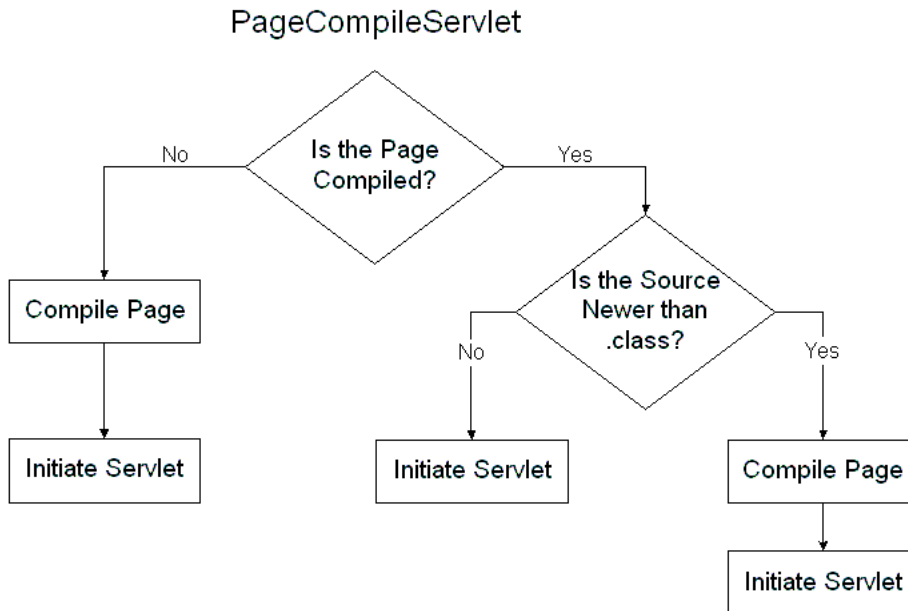
1.27 JSP Processing

The following drawing illustrates how JavaServer Pages are processed.



1.28 PageCompileServlet

The following diagram illustrates the server's decision process for PageCompileServlet.



The server checks to see if the page is compiled. If the page is not compiled, then the server compiles the page and initiates the servlet.

If the page is compiled, the server checks to see if the source is newer than the .class file. If the .class file is newer than the source, the server initiates the servlet. If the source is newer than the .class file, the server recompiles the page and then initiates the servlet.

1.29 The Request Object

After a user enters data, the data is stored in the request object, which usually implements `javax.servlet.HttpServletRequest`. You can access the request object from within a scriptlet. The following table lists request objects.

Table 1–2 Request Objects

Method	Defined In	Job Performed
<code>getRequest</code>	<code>javax.servlet.jsp.PageContext</code>	Returns the current request object.
<code>getParameterNames</code>	<code>javax.servlet.Servlet.Request</code>	Returns the names of the parameters that the request currently contains.
<code>getParameterValues</code>	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequest</code>	Returns the values of the parameters that the request currently contains.
<code>getParameter</code>	<code>javax.servlet.ServletRequest</code>	Returns the value of the parameter if you provide the name.

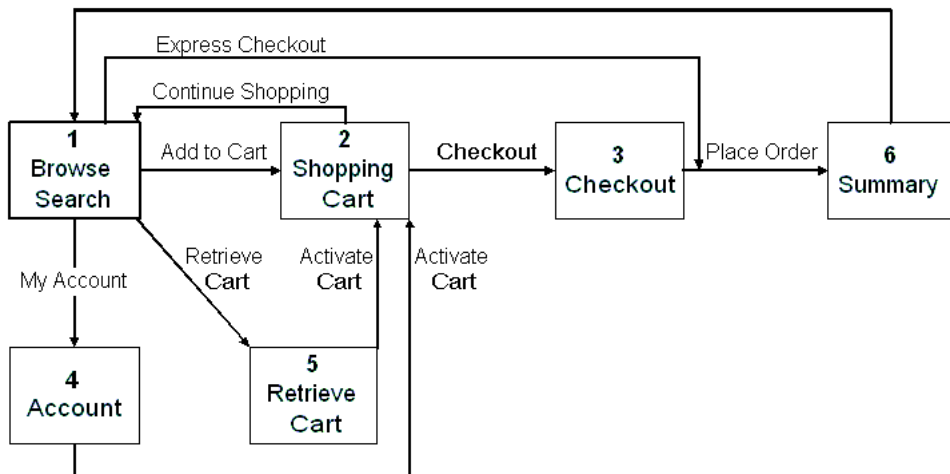
Using Oracle iStore 11i

This chapter describes the administration of Oracle iStore 11i after you have verified your installation and dependency setup.

Refer to *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* and *Implementing Oracle CRM: ERP Functional Checklist* for information on setting up Oracle iStore 11i.

2.1 Setting Up the Store Business Flow

The flow through your store must follow a certain path, as shown in the following top level diagram and related detail diagrams. Oracle iStore 11i provides templates you can use for the pages illustrated in the diagrams.



Customers enter the store at (1) and browse through the store pages. See [Section 1.15, "Business Flows and Templates for Search"](#) to view the expanded diagram.

If the customers want to edit their user information, view orders, or use saved shopping carts and lists, then they click My Account (4). A customer can reach the account page from any other page. See [Section 1.19, "Business Flows and Templates for Account"](#) to view the expanded diagram.

While shopping, customers choose items to add to the shopping cart (2). When they add an item, the shopping cart page appears. See [Section 1.16, "Business Flows and Templates for Shopping Cart"](#) to view the expanded diagram. Continue Shopping takes the customer back to the home page.

Customers who are browsing the store can retrieve a previously saved shopping cart (5), which takes them to the shopping cart page.

Customers ready to purchase the items in the shopping cart click Checkout and go to the checkout page (3). See [Section 1.17, "Business Flows and Templates for B2B Checkout"](#) and [Section 1.18, "Business Flows and Templates for B2C Checkout"](#) to view the expanded diagrams.

The checkout process takes customers to the summary page (6). Customers click Express Checkout to omit the shopping cart and checkout process and go directly to placing the order.

2.2 Overview of Creating Your Store

Oracle iStore 11i ships with templates and defaults that allow you to develop a basic store. You can customize presentation and add functionality as required. The Merchant UI enables you to create and modify your specialty stores.

The following prerequisites must be met prior to creating your initial store:

Prerequisites

- Define JTF profiles. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for details.
- Define IBE profiles. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for details.
- Run concurrent jobs. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for details.
- Set up shipping options. See *Oracle Order Management User's Guide* and *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide* for details.

- Set up payment options. See *Oracle Order Management User's Guide* and *Oracle iPayment Implementation Guide* for details.
- Set up price lists and currencies in Oracle Pricing. See *Oracle Pricing User's Guide* and *Oracle Order Management User's Guide* for details.
You must select a price list for each type of customer on the Oracle iStore 11i Currencies and Price Lists page. Only maximum order limit is optional.
- Set up languages in Oracle AOL. See *Oracle Applications Concepts* for details.
Set a default language for the store.
- Set up business units in Oracle General Ledger. See *Oracle Applications Concepts* and *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* for details.

Note: If the information for these prerequisites is unknown, you can continue with the setup now and revise this information later.

Customizing your store also requires the following tasks:

- Identify the ways in which the store will display products.
- Plan page designs and divide them into common components that you can make into templates.
- Invent a name for each possible template to facilitate planning and communication of designs.
- Customize templates now as part of the design or later in the setup cycle.

You can create a specialty store using Oracle iStore 11i by the following suggested sequence of steps. The steps required to develop a basic store are labeled, "Required." The other steps are necessary to customize the appearance and functionality of the store.

Steps

1. Required: Access the Merchant UI.
2. Required: Set up a specialty store.
3. Create proprietary media source files for use in the customized store. Some examples of media file types are small .gif, large .gif, descriptive text, audio, and video. The types of media you can use in the store depend on the capabilities of the browsers that will access it.

4. Catalog Oracle iStore 11i multimedia in the Multimedia tab to make them available for assignment to multimedia components. Each multimedia name cataloged can have a number of media source files assigned to it.
5. Define and catalog multimedia components under **Multimedia Components** in the Setup tab. Enter a default multimedia name for each multimedia component.
6. Create template source files for pages and for blocks within pages using Oracle JDeveloper or another Web page authoring application.
7. Catalog Oracle iStore 11i templates in the Template tab. Each template name cataloged can have a number of template source files assigned to it.
8. Define and catalog the display styles determined during planning, under **Display Styles** in the Setup tab. Enter a default template name for each display style.
9. Required: Set up an overall hierarchy for the store sections and products.
If necessary, you can later modify the overall hierarchy for your products using the Hierarchy tab. For example, you can add items to a section, remove items from a section, and create or delete sections.
10. Required: Build the product catalog.
11. Create new relationship types.
12. Customize product presentation at the category level.
13. Customize product presentation at the item level.
14. Set up a product search for the Customer UI.
15. Customize shopping cart presentation and functionality.
16. Required: Test the Customer UI.

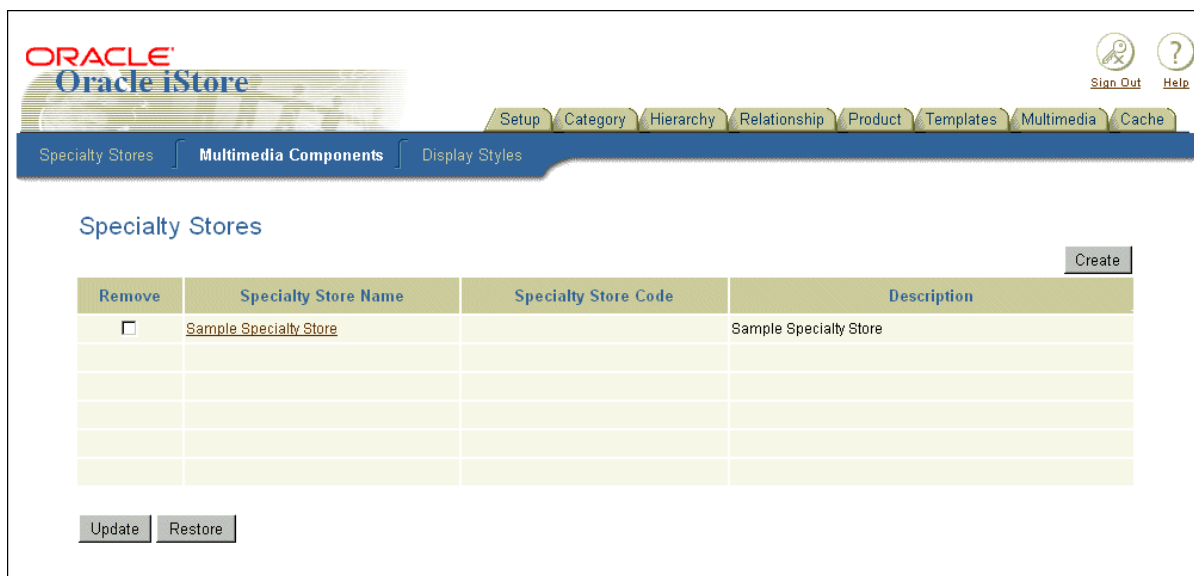
2.3 Accessing the Merchant UI

After installing Oracle iStore 11i and setting up the Merchant UI, you can enter the Merchant UI by logging in to:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfflogin.jsp
```

with a user name that the system administrator has set up as an Oracle iStore 11i store manager user account. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information on creating a store manager user account.

Figure 2–1 The Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI



2.4 Creating Specialty Stores

A specialty store is any Web store. You can create multiple stores, for example a main store, a store for one large customer, a holiday specials store, and a store that requires registered users. You must create at least one store.

Multiple currencies and languages can be selected for every specialty store. The customer's preference, as defined in his or her user profile, determines which currency and language is to be used for a store. Once a registered customer selects a preferred language, the store defaults to that preferred language each time the customer enters. When the user preference is not set, default language and currency settings will take effect.

Users can also change their display languages and currencies by choosing from a list of the languages and currencies supported by the store. When a customer changes the display language and currency, Oracle iStore 11i changes his or her preferred language and currency to match the newly selected display language and currency. This change enables consistency across customer sessions and Oracle applications. For example, this will ensure that the order confirmation alert in a

German language store will be in German, even if the customer's previous preferred language was French.

Customers must also choose the responsibility with which they enter a specialty store. The Customer UI shows a list of available combinations of specialty stores and Oracle iStore 11i responsibilities. When the customer chooses one of these combinations, he or she enters that specialty store with that responsibility for the current session. The responsibility determines the operating unit against which any orders placed in the current session are booked. The responsibility also determines the values of the profile options set at the responsibility level.

You can set up specialty stores to check the customers' responsibilities when they log in. For every specialty store flagged to check the user's responsibility, the Customer UI excludes those specialty store-responsibility combinations containing responsibilities not associated with the user.

Note: If the customer can only access one specialty store-responsibility combination, he or she is automatically forwarded to that specialty store's home page with that responsibility and does not see a list of specialty store-responsibility combinations.

Use Oracle Forms to create responsibilities and assign them to customer user names. See *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11i* and *Oracle CRM Foundation Concepts and Procedures, Release 11i* for more information.

Use the following procedure to create a basic specialty store.

Note: Specialty stores are also referred to as "minisites."

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. In the Setup tab, choose **Specialty Stores**.
3. Click **Create**. The Specialty Store Detail screen appears.
4. Enter the basic information for the specialty store in the following fields. The fields marked with an asterisk in the Merchant UI are mandatory.
 - a. Specialty Store Name: Enter the name of the specialty store.

- b. Specialty Store Code
 - c. Description: Enter a description for the specialty store.
 - d. Start Date: Enter the date when the specialty store should first be active and available to customers.
 - e. End Date: Enter the date when the specialty store should no longer be active and available to customers.
5. In the Languages section, check the Select checkbox next to each language that you want the specialty store to support.
 6. In the Default Language pull-down menu, choose the default language for your specialty store.
 7. Click **Continue**. The Store Flags screen appears.

This screen is used to select the root section for the specialty store from the Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy and to determine whether the specialty store will:

- Be ATP Enabled for Oracle Inventory
 - Allow walk-in customers (customers who have not logged in or registered)
 - Check user responsibility
8. From the ATP Enabled pull-down menu, choose **Yes** if you want this store to provide ATP inventory information to the customer.
 9. From the Walkin Customers Enabled pull-down menu, choose **Yes** if you want this store to allow walk-in customers who are not registered or logged in.
 10. From the Check User Responsibility pull-down menu, choose **Yes** if you want the store to check user responsibility when customers log in.
 11. Click **Go** next to the Root Section field.

A pop-up window displays the Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy.

12. Search for and highlight the root section of the store, and click **Done**.

The pop-up window closes, and the Root Section field is populated with the name of the section you have chosen.

Note: A root section is required for each specialty store.

13. Click **Continue**.

The Supported Responsibilities screen appears.

14. Click Add Responsibility.

The Select Responsibility pop-up window opens.

- 15.** In the Select Responsibility pop-up window, search for responsibilities that you want this specialty store to support by application and responsibility name, key, or description, using the wildcard character % if necessary. Check the Select checkbox next to the responsibilities, and click **Add**. When you are finished selecting responsibilities, click **Done**.

You return to the Supported Responsibilities page.

- 16.** In the Display Name fields, enter user-friendly names by which each specialty store-responsibility combination will appear in the Customer UI.
- 17.** In the Start Date and End Date fields, enter the dates when the specialty store will support each responsibility you have added.
- 18.** In the Order fields, specify the order in which these responsibilities will appear on the customer login page.

19. Click Continue.

The Access Restrictions page appears.

20. Click Add Organization.

The Select Organization pop-up window opens.

- 21.** In the Select Organization pop-up window, search for organizations by name or account number, using the wildcard character % if necessary. Check the Select checkbox next to the organizations you want to add to the list, and click **Add**. When you are finished selecting organizations, click **Done**.

You return to the Access Restrictions page.

22. Highlight one of the three radio buttons:

- No Restriction, if you want this specialty store to allow users from any organization
- Include the following organizations, if you want this specialty store to allow only users from the organizations you specify in this page
- Exclude the following organizations, if you want this specialty store to deny access only to users from the organizations you specify in this page

23. In the Start Date and End Date fields, enter the dates when the inclusion or exclusion of the listed organizations is effective.
24. Click **Continue**.

The Currencies and Price Lists page displays available currencies.
25. Choose currencies by checking the Select checkbox next to the currencies that you want this specialty store to support.
26. For each selected currency, choose the price lists for Walk-in Customer, Registered Customer, and Business Partner from the pull-down menus.
27. Optional: Enter a maximum orderable limit for each selected currency.
28. Choose the default currency for the store from the Default Currency pull-down menu.
29. Click **Continue**.

The new specialty store is saved.

To modify an existing specialty store, click on its name in the **Setup > Specialty Stores** section of the Merchant UI and change the information as needed. Click on **Update** instead of **Continue** in the specialty store information pages to save your changes.

2.5 Customizing Multimedia

Multimedia consist of files such as graphics, text, audio, and video, that are used to present content on a Web page to your customer.

The Oracle iStore 11i multimedia catalog enables you to make customized multimedia available for use in your stores and organize the multimedia according to specialty stores and languages. See [Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#) for information about how the information you enter here is used by the store.

To customize the appearance of your store pages, you must perform these tasks:

- Create proprietary media source files.
- Catalog Oracle iStore 11i multimedia and assign multimedia source files to each multimedia object.

2.5.1 Creating Media Source Files

Creating your own media source files for use in your store pages can enhance the appearance of your store to serve better the store's purposes.

Types of media source files can include smallgraphics (.gif), large .gif, descriptive text, audio, and video. You can create these files through media authoring programs.

All media source files should be placed in the OA_MEDIA directory.

2.5.2 Cataloging Multimedia

Each multimedia object that you list in the Oracle iStore 11i multimedia catalog can have a number of media source files assigned to it. Each of these source files can be assigned to combinations of specialty stores and languages. Each multimedia object is in turn available for assignment to multimedia components, which are called by templates to determine which multimedia object appears on a given store page.

Naming Multimedia

The multimedia name is the catalog name that is easy to communicate and use when planning your page designs. An example is *CompanyLogo*. This name can be translated for convenience in store administration.

Every multimedia name is given a programmatic access name that is short, unique, and not as descriptive. The programmatic access name is used to display that multimedia file in your Web page, if you want to refer to it directly in the template. An example is *clogo*. This name is not translated.

The multimedia name and programmatic access name represent several source files. You assign each source file to combinations of specialty stores and languages. The following table lists examples of file names for the multimedia name *CompanyLogo*.

Table 2–1 Sample Media File Names for the Multimedia Name *CompanyLogo*

Multimedia Name	Programmatic Access Name	File	Specialty Store	Language
CompanyLogo	clogo	clog1f.gif	specialty store 1	French
CompanyLogo	clogo	clog1e.gif	specialty store 1	English
CompanyLogo	clogo	clog2f.gif	specialty store 2	French
CompanyLogo	clogo	clog2e.gif	specialty store 2	English

In this example, if a French customer enters specialty store 1, the store displays the logo file `clog1f.gif`. An English customer entering the same specialty store sees `clog1e.gif` instead.

To see the multimedia which have been seeded into Oracle iStore 11*i* and are available for use in your store, enter the Multimedia tab. This page lists the existing multimedia and their programmatic access names, keywords, descriptions, and default source files for all specialty stores and languages. Click individual multimedia names for more detail. Choosing **View All Mappings** from within an individual detail page displays each source file name and its relationship to specialty stores and languages.

Use this procedure to catalog Oracle iStore 11*i* multimedia and assign multimedia source files to the names.

Prerequisites

- The default language must have been defined.
- At least one specialty store must have been created.

Steps

1. In the Multimedia tab, search for multimedia that are already cataloged and available to use in your store.

The Multimedia page lists the multimedia that match your search criteria along with their programmatic access names, keywords, descriptions, and the default source files to use for all specialty stores and languages.

2. Click **Create**.

The Multimedia Details page appears.

Figure 2–2 The Multimedia Details Page

ORACLE
Oracle iStore

Sign Out Help

Setup Category Hierarchy Relationship Product Templates Multimedia Cache

Multimedia Details

Information and Source Files

*Name Keywords

*Programmatic Access Name Displays

Default Source File For All Sites and Languages Description

Update Restore

3. In the Name field, define the multimedia name. Choose a name that is representative of the multimedia object's characteristics and purpose.
4. In the Programmatic Access Name field, define the programmatic access name, which is the name by which the multimedia object will be accessed from the template. Do not duplicate other programmatic access names.
5. In the Default Source File For All Sites and Languages field, define the default media source file by entering the location of the file relative to the OA_MEDIA directory, where all media source files should reside. For example, enter the GIF file product.gif from the OA_MEDIA directory as /OA_MEDIA/product.gif. This default source file will be used by Oracle iStore 11i, unless a specialty store and language has a specific media source file mapping. If only one language or specialty store is defined or if no specialty store has been created, use the defaults.
6. In the Displays pull-down menu, specify if this multimedia object will be available for product- and category-level (**Category**) or section-level (**Section**) presentation, or for page features not specifically associated with catalog presentation (**Others**).

7. Optional: In the Keywords field, enter keywords for the multimedia. Entering keywords enables a keyword-based search for this multimedia object when assigning a multimedia object name to a multimedia component.
8. Optional: In the Description field, enter a multimedia description. Entering a description enables a description-based search for this multimedia object when assigning a multimedia object name to a multimedia component.
9. Click **Update**. The Multimedia Details Information and Source Files window appears.
10. Optional: Click **Add Source File** to provide files for the same multimedia name in different languages and specialty stores. The Source File Details page appears.
 - a. Enter the name of a media source file, such as a graphic file, that you want to display on a Web page for the multimedia name that you are creating, for example, `/OA_MEDIA/video.jpg`. Click **Update**.
 - b. Add each specialty store and language where you want the new source file to appear, then click **Update**.
 - c. The relationship between the multimedia name, source files, specialty stores, and languages is saved.
 - d. Repeat this procedure for each source file that you want to add.
11. Optional: Choose **View All Mappings** in the Multimedia Details Information and Source Files window.

The View All Mappings page displays each source file name and its relationship to specialty stores and languages. This step is highly recommended.

2.6 Cataloging Multimedia Components

Multimedia components define the types of multimedia objects available for display on a Web page, such as an image of a certain size, short text description, or a ten-second audio file. They enable assignment of default and specific multimedia objects at the product, category, section, and store levels.

Multimedia components are called by the store Web page templates to determine which multimedia appear on a given store page. One multimedia component dynamically displays the correct media file in your store according to the product, category, or section that the customer chooses to view. See [Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#) for more information about how Oracle iStore 11i uses the information that you enter here.

When you catalog a multimedia component, you choose a default multimedia object that is active at store level. In the Hierarchy tab, there are multimedia component fields where you can choose a multimedia object name to correspond with each component for each section.

In the Product and Category tabs, there are also multimedia component fields where you can choose a multimedia object name to correspond with each component for the product or category. Pages associated with the product or category will use this multimedia object instead of the store-level multimedia.

Seeded Values

- STORE_PRODUCT_LARGE_IMAGE
- STORE_PRODUCT_SMALL_IMAGE
- STORE_SECTION_SMALL_IMAGE

You can view the seeded values in the Multimedia Components tab. This page lists existing multimedia components and their programmatic access names, descriptions, default multimedia, and default source files.

Use this procedure to catalog multimedia components that you want to assign to sections, categories, or products.

Prerequisites

Define the types of media objects you want to use on your store Web pages.

You can select a default multimedia object name for a multimedia component only after you have cataloged multimedia. If the default information is unavailable, you can continue the setup and select a default multimedia name at a later time.

However, if a multimedia association is requested for any product, category, or section with that multimedia component, and there is no product-specific, category-specific, or section-specific association for the multimedia component, Oracle iStore 11*i* uses the default multimedia object name defined at the store level.

To avoid the error, you can also use the multimedia component's seeded values, as listed in the Multimedia Components tab.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. In the Setup tab, choose **Multimedia Components**.

The Multimedia Components page displays a list of existing multimedia components and each component's default multimedia name. It also lists the default media source file for each multimedia name.

3. Click **Create**.

The Multimedia Component Details page appears.

Figure 2–3 The Multimedia Component Details Page

The screenshot shows the Oracle Applications interface for the 'Multimedia Component Details' page. The top navigation bar includes 'Specialty Stores', 'Multimedia Components', and 'Display Styles'. The main content area has the title 'Multimedia Component Details' and four input fields: '*Name', '*Programmatic Access Name', 'Description', and 'Default Multimedia'. A 'Go' button is positioned to the right of the 'Default Multimedia' field. At the bottom of the form, there are 'Update' and 'Restore' buttons.

4. In the Name field, define the multimedia component name.
5. In the Programmatic Access Name field, define the programmatic access name. This name is called by the templates for the store Web pages that use this multimedia component.
6. Optional: In the description field, enter a description of the multimedia component. Entering a description enables a description-based search for this multimedia component.
7. In the Default Multimedia field, click **Go** to select a default multimedia name for this component. This default multimedia object will appear in pages associated with this multimedia component when the pages' products, categories, or sections have no specific multimedia assignments for this component.

8. Click **Update**.

The multimedia component information is saved.

2.7 Customizing Templates

Oracle iStore 11*i* Web page designs use common components, such as section tabs and browse bins. Each component is based on a template, and the templates are combined to create a store Web page. The templates control the appearance of the store through the use of JavaServer Pages (JSP), which combine Application Programming Interfaces (API) to call dynamic data and HTML to present static data.

Oracle iStore 11*i* comes packaged with a complete set of JSP templates needed to run the store. If you want to expand the functionality of the store Web pages or customize the pre-packaged templates, then you need to identify the flow of the application and the JSP templates needed to implement the flow.

To customize templates for your store, perform the following tasks after planning your Web page designs:

- Create template source files for pages and for blocks within pages using a Web authoring application.
- Choose Oracle iStore 11*i* template names.
- Catalog template names in the Merchant UI and assign template source files to each template name.

2.7.1 Creating Template Source Files

You can create new JSP templates to replace or add to the Oracle iStore 11*i* seeded templates. Different physical JSP templates can be used at run-time based on the language and specialty store.

Note: It is recommended that you use Oracle JDeveloper to create and modify JSP templates. Although you can create JSPs with any HTML or text editor, Oracle JDeveloper also enables you to debug the code.

The major skills required to create and modify templates are HTML and JSP. JSP embeds Java language methods in the HTML content to generate dynamic content

on the Web page. The structure of a JSP page is demonstrated in the following HTML example.

```
<HTML>
<% import="oracle.apps.ibe.util.*" %>
....
....
<P> Name : <% = customer.getName(12334) %>
    Where customer is a Java class on the server and getName is a public method
    in the class to retrieve the customer Name.

<P> Picture: <IMG SRC = "<%= customer.getPict(12334) %>">
    This step can retrieve the image file name from the customer Java class on the
    server.

....
</HTML>
```

The default UNIX directory for JSP source code is `$COMMON_TOP/html`. All `ibem*.jsp` templates are for the Merchant UI, and all `ibeC*.jsp` templates are for the Customer UI. New templates should also be placed in the `$COMMON_TOP/html` directory. Changes made to the JSPs may not appear immediately on the Web stores, since you must reboot the Apache server before changes take effect.

Deleting the server cache has the same effect as rebooting the Apache server. The server cache is located in the UNIX directory `$COMMON_TOP/html/_pages/oa_html`. This cache directory contains `.java` and `.class` files that are generated after the JSP that has been called is translated. These can be safely deleted and will be regenerated when the JSP is invoked through an HTTP request.

After creating or modifying templates, you can pre-compile them to check for compilation errors and to increase the speed of the initial loading.

Note: Sometimes it is not immediately obvious that templates referred to in the JSP code are in fact JSPs themselves. To find the JSP name of a template, search in the Template tab of the Merchant UI for the template name referenced in the code. The JSP name is included in the template listing. This JSP can then be modified to suit the requirements of the project.

See [Section B.1, "JSP Standards \(Customer Facing\)"](#) for more information.

JSP Naming Conventions

Modify JSP templates only after renaming them first. All modified JSPs should follow a standard naming convention, e.g., name of project-name of jsp.jsp

This will make future Oracle iStore 11*i* upgrades less problematic.

Note: Never change an original JSP. To modify a JSP, make a copy of the original JSP and modify only the copy. If a bug occurs, compare the JSP copy to the JSP original.

Cascading Style Sheets (CSS)

Oracle iStore 11*i* uses the logical template name JTF_STYLE_SHEET in the JSP template files to call the Cascading Style Sheet (CSS) that determines fonts, sizes, colors, and other elements of look and feel. As with JSP templates, you can map different CSS source files to the same logical template name for different specialty stores and languages.

Oracle iStore 11*i* comes with a single CSS called jtfucss.css, and the JTF_STYLE_SHEET is seeded with this CSS as the default source file for all sites and languages. The CSS resides in the \$COMMON_TOP/html directory and can be modified using an HTML editor. Place any other style sheets that you create in the same directory.

2.7.2 Choosing Template Names

Cataloging templates involves setting up Oracle iStore 11*i* template objects with names and descriptions and specifying the different physical JSP templates to be used at run-time based on language and specialty store. These template objects can be additions to, or replacements for, the Oracle iStore 11*i* seeded template objects.

Naming Templates

The template name is the catalog name that is easy to communicate and use when planning your page designs. An example is *ProductHome*. Template names may be translated for convenience in store administration.

Every template name also has a programmatic access name that is short, unique, and not as descriptive. The programmatic access name is inserted into your Web page or template. An example is *phome*. Programmatic access names are not translated.

The template name and programmatic access name represent several physical template source files. Each physical file can be assigned to combinations of specialty

stores and languages. When Oracle iStore 11i retrieves an assigned template name, the template source file is determined by the mapping of the template name to the current specialty store and language.

The Display Manager is the class that implements Oracle iStore 11i's Template Manager. The Template Manager maintains a mapping from a logical name or access name of a media object to a physical name on the file system. For example, STORE_HOME (logical) maps to ibeCZzpHome.jsp (physical). When the Web store is active, the Display Manager determines what physical file to call from the logical template or multimedia component name, based on the specialty store and language.

The following table shows examples of file names for ProductHome.

Table 2–2 Sample JSP File Names for the Template Name ProductHome

Template Name	Programmatic Access Name	File	Specialty Store	Language
ProductHome	phome	hom1f.jsp	specialty store 1	French
ProductHome	phome	hom1e.jsp	specialty store 1	English
ProductHome	phome	hom2f.jsp	specialty store 2	French
ProductHome	phome	hom2e.jsp	specialty store 2	English

In this example, if a French customer enters specialty store 1, the store displays the home page file hom1f.jsp. An English customer in the same specialty store 1 sees hom1e.jsp instead.

Templates can also be assigned to products, categories, and sections. You can specify these assignments through the Display Style options available in the Product, Category, and Hierarchy tabs, after setting up the Display Styles catalog. See [Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#) and [Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#) for details.

2.7.3 Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager

You can catalog templates using the Template Manager functionality, accessible through the Merchant UI Templates tab. Use this procedure to create or modify template object names and programmatic access names, select default store-level template source files for them, and assign other template source files to them according to specialty store and language settings.

To display text in multiple languages, use Oracle Application Object Library's Message Manager.

Prerequisites

- At least one specialty store must have already been created.
- At least one language must have already been defined.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. In the Templates tab, search for templates that are already cataloged and available for use in your store.

The Templates page lists the names of the templates that match your search criteria, with their programmatic access names, keywords, descriptions, display level, and the default source files to use for all specialty stores and languages.

3. Click **Create**. To modify a template listing, click the template name in the page instead.

The Template Details Information and Source Files page appears.

Figure 2–4 The Template Details Information and Source Files Page

ORACLE
Oracle iStore

Sign Out Help

Setup Category Hierarchy Relationship Product Templates Multimedia Cache

Template Details

[Information and Source Files](#) [View All Mappings](#) [Categories](#)

*Name Keywords

*Programmatic Access Name Displays category

Default Source File For All Sites and Languages Description

[Source File for Other Sites and Languages](#)

Remove	Source File
<input type="checkbox"/>	sntemp.jsp

Add Source File 1-1 of 1

Update Restore

4. In the Name field, enter the name by which the template is referred to during the planning stage, i.e., the common name.
5. In the Programmatic Access Name field, enter the name by which the template is referred to in the JSP.
6. In the Default Source File For All Sites and Languages field, enter the JSP to be used as the default if a non-default language or specialty store mapping is not defined.
7. In the Displays field, specify from the pull-down menu whether the template will be used to display a section (**section**), or a product or category (**category**). If the template will be used on Web pages that do not display the product catalog, choose **others** from the pull-down menu.

8. Optional: In the Keywords field, enter keywords for the template. Entering keywords enables a keyword-based search for this template when assigning a template to a display style.
9. Optional: In the Description field, enter a description for the template. Entering a description enables a description-based search for this template when assigning a template to a display style.
10. Click **Update**. An updated Template Details Information and Source Files page appears with a Source File for Other Sites and Languages section.
11. Optional: Click **Add Source File** to choose files for the same template in different languages and specialty stores. See the Guidelines below for details.

The Source File Details page appears.

- a. Enter the name of a physical JSP source file that you want to use for the template name you are creating. Click **Update**.

An updated Source File details page appears with a Specialty Store and Language Mappings section.

- b. Add each store specialty store and language combination where you want the physical file to be used for this template, using the Specialty Store drop-down list and the **Go** buttons next to the Languages fields. Click **Update**.

The relationship between the template name, source file, specialty stores, and languages is saved.

- c. To add another physical file, click on the template name link.

The Template Details Information and Source Files page with the Source File for Other Sites and Languages section appears.

Click **Add Source File** and repeat this step to add another physical file to this template.

12. Optional: In the Template Details Information and Source Files page, choose **View All Mappings**.

The View All Mappings page displays each physical file name and its relationship to specialty stores and languages. This step is highly recommended.

13. Optional: In the Templates tab, choose **Categories** if the template you created is meant to display product categories.

The Templates - Assigned Categories screen lists the categories to which the template has been assigned. Click a category name to view all templates that have been assigned to the category.

14. Optional: If the template you created is meant to display product categories, you can assign it to categories now in the Category tab. In the Category tab, follow this procedure to add a template:
 - a. Click the name of the category to which the template is applicable.

The Templates Assigned page lists all template names and default source template files for the chosen category.
 - b. In the Templates Assigned page, click **Go**.

A list of available template names appears.
 - c. Select the template(s) you wish to assign to the category.
 - d. Click **Add**. The pop-up window closes when you select **Done**.

You can edit template information by clicking the template name in the Templates tab.

2.8 Cataloging Display Styles

Display styles specify how to present products on a Web page. For example, one display style specifies how to display Product A on a special sale page containing multiple products, and a different display style specifies how to display Product A on a page detailing product information. A display style calls an Oracle iStore 11i template, which then calls the appropriate template source file for the specialty store and language.

When you catalog display styles in the Setup tab, you choose store-level default template names for them. The display styles appear in the Product and Category tabs with fields where you can choose a template name to correspond with each display style for a product or a category. The display style fields also appear in the Hierarchy tab, where you can choose a template name to correspond with each display style for a section.

When a store Web page displays a product using a particular display style, Oracle iStore 11i selects the appropriate template as follows:

- If there is a product-specific template for the given display style, then the product-specific template is used.

- If no mapping is specified at the product level, and there is a category-specific template, then the category-specific template is used.
- If no template name is selected for a product or a category, then the display style's default store-level template is used on the Web page.

Clicking **Display Styles** in the Setup tab lists seeded display styles and their programmatic access names, descriptions, default templates, and default source files.

Seeded Values

- STORE_FEATURED_PRODUCT
- STORE_PRODUCT_DESCR
- STORE_PRODUCT_DETAIL
- STORE_PRODUCT_DETAILS
- STORE_PRODUCT_SMALL_DESCR

Use the following procedure to create more display styles. See [Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#) for information about how the information you enter here is used by the store.

Prerequisites

You can select a default template only after you have cataloged templates. If the information is unavailable, you may continue the setup and select a default template later. However, if a template association is requested for any product or section with that display style and is not specified, Oracle iStore 11*i* will use the default store-level template.

To avoid the error, you can also use the seeded values for display styles, listed under **Display Styles** in the Setup tab.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. In the Setup tab, choose **Display Styles**.

The Display Styles page displays a list of existing display styles.

3. Click **Create**.

The Display Style Details page appears.

4. Assign names and descriptions to the display style.
5. Optional: Click **Go** to select a default template for this display style.
6. Click **Update**.

The display style information is saved.

You can edit display style information by clicking the display style name in the Display Styles page in the Setup tab.

2.9 Creating and Modifying the Hierarchy

After saving the specialty store, you must define an overall hierarchy in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI Hierarchy tab. This hierarchy determines the organization of your specialty stores and their sections and products in the Merchant UI. It also determines the organization and presentation of each store's sections and products in the Customer UI. All the specialty stores you create will be based in the overall hierarchy you created when setting up your initial specialty store.

The overall hierarchy contains products from Oracle Inventory, grouped into sections. Associate a specialty store to a portion of the overall hierarchy or to the whole hierarchy itself by setting up its root node to point to a section. When reorganizing store sections and products or adding new specialty stores, you need to modify the overall hierarchy.

The hierarchy determines the browsing experience of the customer and what products are featured at different levels in the store. When users come to a specialty store, they see the hierarchy starting from the root node of the store. You can choose not to show a particular section in a specialty store even though the given specialty store might point to an ancestor of the section.

Set up the top level sections in the hierarchy first. For each top level section, create as many subsections or children as you wish. The levels of sections are driven by the design.

You can assign products to sections of the hierarchy from the Hierarchy or Product tabs. Similarly, you can create groups of featured products at any level in the hierarchy by creating a subsection of type Featured in that section. The products in a section are shown by using the display style that you specify for that section.

Note: In the Customer UI for Oracle iStore 11*i*, the minisite root sections are treated as virtual roots. The current minisite's root section will not appear in the menu tabs or the navigational hierarchy of the Customer UI. The minisite's home page will display the first navigational subsection under the root section, not the root section page itself. To present featured sections on the minisite's home page, make them subsections of this navigational subsection.

Your template design determines how to manifest the hierarchy for the user. You can create and revise new templates at any time.

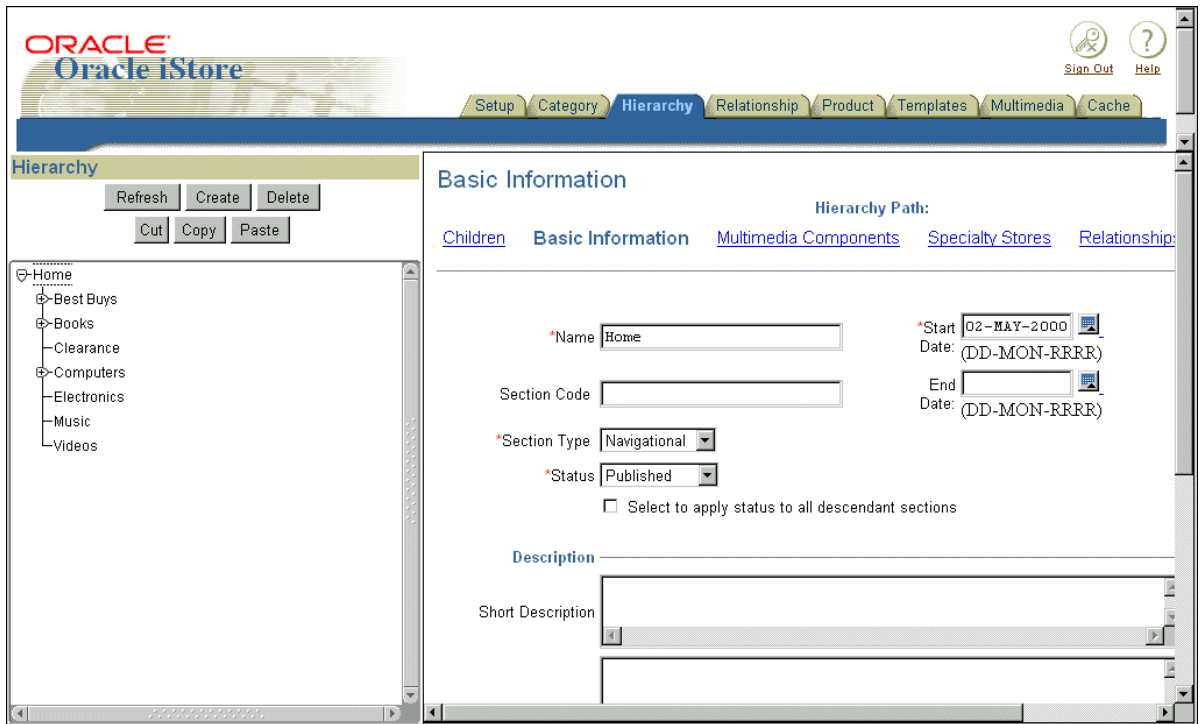
In the templates shipped with Oracle iStore 11*i*, the top level appears as tabs while the lower level appears as browse bins on the store pages. A section containing subsections shows the featured products in the middle and the subsections in the left browse bin. If a section contains only products, it lists the products in the middle. Featured sections cannot have subsections.

While working with the hierarchy, you can determine whether or not to publish sections. A published section is available in the Customer UI. An unpublished section is not available in the Customer UI, unless the user has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility. Thus, you can choose to keep a section unpublished until you have tested its appearance in the Customer UI.

You can also specify whether the descendant sections have the same published/unpublished status as the section on which you are currently working. If a section is unpublished, its descendant sections are effectively unpublished, since a user cannot navigate to the descendant sections in the Customer UI (unless he or she has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility). However, if a user knows the exact URL to access a descendant section, the user can access the descendant section if it is published.

If any section is not published, a user lacking the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility cannot access the section even if he or she has the exact URL.

Figure 2-5 The Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI Hierarchy Tab



Prerequisites

Profile set up for IBE:Item Validation Organization (see definition for IBE_ITEM_VALIDATION_ORGANIZATION profile).

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI and enter the Hierarchy tab.
2. In the left frame of the Hierarchy tab window, the overall hierarchy tree appears. In the tree, select the node that will host the node you want to create, and click **Create**. (To modify existing information, select the node itself.)
3. The Basic Information Screen appears in the right frame of the Hierarchy tab window. Enter the following information:
 - a. Name: The name of the section.

- b. **Section Code:** Optional. Specify a Section Code by which you can refer to the section in customized templates explicitly by name. The Section Code is the name used in the template to access the section information directly.
- c. **Section Type:** Select either **Featured** or **Navigational** (or another customized section type if available). A featured section appears on the home page of its parent section. A navigational section appears as a link in the browsing map of its parent section.
- d. **Status:** Select either **Published** or **Unpublished**.
- e. **Select to apply status to all descendant sections:** Check this checkbox if you want all descendant sections of this section to have the same status.
- f. **Start Date Active and End Date Active:** Specify the time limit (if any) when this section will be active.
- g. **Short Description and Long Description:** Fill these in to describe the section in the store. The descriptions will appear on the section pages.
- h. **Keywords:** Leave this blank.
- i. **Template for displaying this section:** Optional. Specify a default template for displaying the section. Several sections can share a template. Leave this blank to revert to the store-level default value.

Note: Do not choose a template name that ends with the word "included." These templates display only the center of the section page, not the menu.

- j. **Display Style for products in this section:** Optional. Select the display style you want to use to display products in this section. Leave this blank to revert to the store-level default display style.

Note: If the section is a leaf section, do not choose the display style Product Detail Style.

Click **Continue**. The Multimedia Components screen appears.

- 4. **Optional:** Provide information about multimedia components specific for this section. Use this if you want to show or associate multimedia content with sections. For a given component, click **Go** to search the multimedia catalog. If

the desired object is not found, create one and associate it with the section. Click **Continue**.

The Specialty Stores screen appears.

5. Move the specialty store(s) in which this section should appear into the included Specialty Stores column.

Decide if the section should appear only in the specialty stores that you have selected here or in other specialty stores by default if those specialty stores' roots point to an ancestor of the current section. Check the box **Include in all future sites if the site's root section is ancestor of this section** as appropriate. Click **Continue**.

The Relationships screen appears with a list of existing relationships in the section.

6. Review relationship rules for this section. See [Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#) for information on customizing relationship rules. Click **Continue**.

The Advanced Settings screen appears.

7. Optional: Specify if the section is going to be populated automatically with products from Oracle Inventory based on certain SQL clauses, as well as specify the order.

Note: The auto-placement rule is not currently used.

Optional: Specify Order By clause to specify how the product for a section should be ordered when displayed in the Customer UI. The value for this field can be just one column name from MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS or comma-separated columns of the same table.

Click **Finish**. The Children page appears.

8. Add products or subsections to this section as desired. Note that a section can have either a subsection or products as children, but not both. Featured sections cannot have subsections as children.

You can add products to a section in the Hierarchy tab after building the product catalog. See [Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#) for more information. To add products to a section in the Hierarchy tab:

- a. Navigate to the section's Children page.
- b. Click **Add Product**.
- c. Perform a product search in the pop-up window.
- d. Select one or more of the results and click **Add**.
- e. Click **Done** to close the pop-up window and return to the main store manager window.

You can also add products to a section when working on the product in the Product tab.

To add a subsection to a section:

- a. Navigate to the section's Children page.
- b. Click **Add Section**. A Basic Information screen for the new subsection appears.

Note: The **Add Section** button appears only if the section has no products.

- c. Set up the subsection in the Basic Information, Multimedia Components, Specialty Stores, Relationships, and Children screens in the Hierarchy tab.
9. To adjust the ordering of the section tabs in a minisite, click its root section in the navigation tree and edit the values in the Order column. The section whose display name should be the first tab should have the lowest number in the Order column.
10. Continue to create sections and subsections for your hierarchy as needed. You can use the **Cut**, **Copy**, and **Paste** buttons to move an entire section from one place in the hierarchy to another.

To cut or copy a section, highlight the section and click **Cut** or **Copy** as appropriate.

To paste a section into the hierarchy after cutting or copying it, highlight the root section that should host the pasted section, and click **Paste**.

Note: If you cut and paste a section from one location in the hierarchy to another, all the information about the section will transfer to the new location. If you copy and paste a section, all the information about the original section will copy into the new section, except for the section-level multimedia component settings.

Guidelines

- The display style you choose for products in this section is the style used to display products on a section page for this section.
- Choosing **Include in all future specialty stores if the store's root section is ancestor of this section** in the Specialty Stores screen ties the section to its ancestors. When a specialty store is added to or deleted from the ancestor, the same change applies to all its descendant sections.

Example

1. In the Hierarchy tab, select the **Home** section in the navigation tree in the left frame.
2. In the right frame, click **Children**.
3. Click **Add Section** in the right frame to create a new section.
4. Enter `Featured Products` as the name and the code.
5. Select **Featured** as the section type. Everything else is optional. Click **Continue**.
6. On the Multimedia Components screen, everything is optional. Click **Continue**.
7. Accept the defaults on the Specialty Store and Navigation Relationships screens. Click **Continue**.
The Advanced Settings screen appears. Click **Finish**.
8. In the left frame, click **Refresh**. Expand the Home node, which should have the newly-created section under it.
9. Highlight **Home**, and click **Create**. Repeat the above steps to create another section named Books, with type Navigational.
10. Repeat again for Music, Electronics, and Computers, making them all navigational sections.

2.10 Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog

Setting up the product catalog involves the following considerations:

- Designing screen flow and navigation.
- Determining product items to be sold, their display features, and configuration options.
- Determining types of data required. For example, books may require a title, author, and publisher. See *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* for details on how to use the flexfield structures in Oracle Inventory to store and sort data accordingly.
- Designing the display appearance for different product types. This process determines the number and type of product templates required. For example, perhaps all music products list the artist first and then provide a link to an audio clip, but all clothing products list the clothing type (e.g., jacket) first, followed by a graphic of the item. Oracle iStore 11i ships with the assumption that all product types appear the same on the Customer UI.
- Creating template text for product types. Text embedded in a template makes that template specific to the given product type. For example, the word "Artist" in front of the flexfield where a performer's name is to appear can only be used for the compact disc product category. Embedded text must be manually translated and saved in the required multiple languages as additional template types. Oracle iStore 11i does not translate template text. Alternatively, templates using generic terminology can be more easily applied across product types. For example, using the term "Lead Performer(s)" as a flexfield label could apply to both compact disc and videotape product categories. Providing no flexfield labels in a template allows templates to be most broadly applied across product types.

Use this procedure to add products to the product catalog, make them available for sale in your store, and customize their presentation at the item level. For example, defining proprietary multimedia and multimedia components enables association of specific images with certain products. Item-level customizations override category-level, section-level, and store-level settings.

While working with the product catalog, you can determine whether or not to publish products. A published product is available in the Customer UI, assuming that it is also listed in at least one published section. An unpublished product is not available in the Customer UI, unless the user has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility. Thus, you can choose to keep a product unpublished until you have tested its appearance in the Customer UI.

Prerequisites

- Products must be loaded into Oracle Inventory before they can be imported into Oracle iStore 11i.
- Products in Oracle Inventory must have their Web Status flag set to either Published or Unpublished in the Web Option tab of the Master Item form to appear in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI. Only products with a status of Published can be sold in your store.
- Products in Oracle Inventory must be set with the flag Orderable on Web in the Web Option tab of the Master Item form.
- Products in Oracle Inventory must be set with the flag Customer Orders Enabled in the Order Management tab of the Inventory Master Item form.
- JTF and IBE profile options must be set.
- Shipping options must be seeded into Oracle Shipping. See *Oracle Order Management User's Guide* and *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide* for details.
- Payment options and setup must be seeded into Oracle iPayment. See *Oracle Order Management User's Guide* and *Oracle iPayment Implementation Guide* for details.
- Store layout must have been determined with the following considerations:
 - Site appearance must have been decided.
 - Hierarchy of products, sections, and specialty stores must have been identified.
 - Templates associated with each product, section, and specialty store must have been identified.
 - Templates for full Web pages and areas within Web pages must have been identified.
 - At the implementation level, the mapping between templates and source files must have been decided.
 - Source files (physical templates) must have been created by the UI implementation team with stubs for the dynamic elements, along with the multimedia components to be displayed on the site.
 - Templates must have been populated with the dynamic JSP elements calling Oracle iStore 11i, using the templates shipped with Oracle iStore 11i as a model.

- Display styles must exist before you can assign them to a product. See [Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#) for more information.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI and enter the Product tab.

The Products page appears.

2. Search for products you want to include in your catalog. A search results list appears.

The search criteria are:

- Name
- Part number
- Belongs to category
- Created after date
Use date format DD-MON-RRRR.
- Created before date
Use date format DD-MON-RRRR.
- Status - values should be PUBLISHED or UNPUBLISHED
- New - products created in last x days where x is the profile value of IBE:
Number of Days for New Items

Note: % can be used for a wild card character search.

The Products page lists products in Oracle Inventory that match your search criteria and displays existing product catalog information for those products.

If no products appear on this screen, it is probably because the WEB_STATUS flag in the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table is NULL. For items to appear in the Merchant UI, they should have a Web status of either UNPUBLISHED or PUBLISHED. To make an item show up in the Merchant UI:

- a. Log in to Oracle Forms.
- b. Choose the Inventory responsibility for the Master Inventory Organization.
- c. Choose **Items > Master Items**.

- d. Choose the Master Inventory Organization.
- e. Choose F11 to enter a search query, then choose Ctrl-F11 to execute it.
- f. Use the Web Option tab to publish the desired item(s).

If the Web Option tab in the Master Items Form does not work properly, you can solve this problem by applying the latest Oracle Inventory patchset.

Note: The value for Inventory Organization ID should be the same as IBE_ITEM_VALIDATION_ORGANIZATION profile.

If there are unpublished products in your results, the list shows them with a **Publish** button in the Wizard column. To publish an unpublished product, you can either click on the product name and change the Posting Status to **Published** in the Basic Information window that appears, or click the **Publish** button next to the item name.

Note: Publishing or unpublishing a product in the Oracle iStore 11i Merchant UI also changes the product's Web Status setting in Oracle Inventory.

If you click the **Publish** button:

- a. The Basic Information screen appears.
Optional: Add or modify the basic and long descriptions.
Click **Continue**. The Hierarchy Paths window appears.
 - b. Optional: Add or remove parent sections for the item.
Click **Continue**. The Category and Display Styles window appears.
 - c. Optional: Change template assignments for one or more of the display styles.
Click **Continue**. The Multimedia Components page appears.
 - d. Optional: Change multimedia assignments for one or more of the multimedia components.
 - e. Click **Publish**.
3. Click on a product's name in the search results list to edit its information.

The Basic Information page displays the Posting Status, the inventory name and part number, and any descriptions you have already added to the product catalog.

4. To make the product available to be sold in your store, set the Posting Status to **Published**.

To remove the product from your store, set the Posting Status to **Unpublished**.

Optional: Enter or modify the short and long descriptions.

Click **Update**. The product is published or unpublished immediately. The descriptions are saved, and are also available for display in your store if the product is published.

Note: Products with Posting Status **Published** are visible on the store. Be careful about changing information, since the changes go to the production system and are published immediately. It is recommended that you unpublish the product before making changes, and then republish the item when finished.

5. Optional: Enter or modify the short and long descriptions and click **Update**.

The descriptions are saved and are available to display in your store.

6. In the Products tab, choose **Hierarchy Paths**.

The Hierarchy Paths page displays the hierarchy of sections that have been set up for the store.

7. Optional: Remove or add parent sections for the product, edit the date range when this product will be available in each section, and number the product's place in the section's product display order.

8. In the Products tab, choose **Category and Display Styles**.

The Category and Display Styles page displays the category to which the product belongs and lists all display styles and any template names already assigned to the product.

9. Choose a template name for each display style that you want to use for the product.

To use the category-level default template for a display style, highlight the radio button next to the default setting on the display style line.

To set an item-level template, highlight the radio button next to the field on the display style line and click **Go**. Select a template from the pop-up window that appears. Click **Update** when finished.

10. In the Products tab, choose **Multimedia Components**.

The Multimedia Components page lists all multimedia components you defined in the Setup tab.

11. Optional: Assign multimedia names to multimedia components and click **Update**.

See [Section 2.11, "Creating Images for Products"](#) for more information on associating specific images with a product.

12. In the Products tab, choose **Relationships**.

The Relationships page displays existing relationships between the product and other products or sections and the rules for those relationships, such as the product to show for an upsell or cross sell.

13. To add relationships, go to the Relationship tab. See [Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#) for more information on creating relationships.

14. In the Product tab, choose **Specialty Stores**.

The Specialty Stores page lists the specialty stores where the product will be displayed. By default the product appears in those specialty stores to which the product parent section belongs.

15. Select the specialty stores that should display the product and click **Update**.
16. Repeat this procedure for every product you want to include in the product catalog.

2.11 Creating Images for Products

To associate specific images with certain products, use the following procedure.

Steps

1. Create images for products. Either create a new image for the product (usually done by a graphic artist) or use an existing image.
2. Locate the image and verify that it exists in the directory `/OA_MEDIA/`, where all images for the store should reside.
3. Set up the multimedia in the Merchant UI.

- a. Log in to the Merchant UI and enter the Multimedia tab.
 - b. Click **Create**.
 - c. Enter the details: Name, Programmatic Access Name, Keyword, Description, and Default Source File. For the Default Source File, enter the complete path for the image file, starting with /OA_MEDIA/.
 - d. Click **Update**.
- This creates and saves your multimedia.
4. Set up the Multimedia Component in the Merchant UI to associate the image with the product.
 - a. In the Product tab, search for the product that you want to associate with the image.
 - b. Click the product name.
 - c. Click **Multimedia Components**.
 - d. Highlight the radio button for Item Small Image and/or Item Large Image.
 - e. Click **Go**. A popup window with all the multimedia names will open.
 - f. Select the multimedia set up for the image.
 5. Reboot the Apache server.
 6. Verify that the image is associated with the product in the store's Customer UI.

2.12 Adding Item Descriptive Flexfields

Oracle iStore 11i allows addition of descriptive flexfields to item detail pages. With this option, the item detail page will display the prompt and value of descriptive flexfield global segments if a value is defined for the item. Only global segments of the descriptive flexfield are supported.

Note: The descriptive flexfields appear only if the IBE: Use CABO UI profile is set to Yes. See your system administrator or *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information.

To set up descriptive flexfields on an item detail page, follow this procedure.

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms.
2. Select the Application Developer responsibility.
3. Choose **Flexfield > Description > Segments** to open the Descriptive Flexfields window.
4. Choose **View > Find**, and query for the flexfield with `Application = Oracle Inventory` and `Title = Items`.
5. Set up flexfield segments for Global Data Elements. See *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide* for additional details.
6. Switch to the Inventory responsibility.
7. To set up flexfield segments and values for items and their detail pages:
 - a. Navigate to the Inventory Item window and find the item for which flexfield values will be entered. Use the inventory organization that is set in the profile option IBE: Item Validation Organization.
 - b. Click on the rectangle enclosed within [] next to the Description field in the Inventory Item window.
 - c. A window appears with the flexfield segments set up in the previous steps.
 - d. Enter values for the flexfield segments you want to display on the item detail page.
8. Test that the descriptive flexfield segments appear in the item detail pages as desired, using the following procedure:
 - a. Reboot the Apache server to clear the cache after entering the data.
 - b. In the Customer UI, navigate to the item detail page for an item with flexfield values entered.
 - c. The flexfield segment prompts and values should appear on the item detail page.

2.13 Selling Serviceable and Service Items

Selling serviceable and service items in your Web stores requires setups in Oracle Inventory, Oracle Pricing, and AOL, as well as the setting of the profile options IBE: Use Support and IBE: Use Support Cart Level.

The following procedures are required before you can offer serviceable and service items in your Web stores:

- [Setting Up Serviceable Items in Oracle Inventory](#)
- [Setting Up Service Items in Oracle Inventory](#)
- [Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing](#)
- [Setting Up Service Items in AOL](#)

See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information.

2.13.1 Setting Up Serviceable Items in Oracle Inventory

Follow this procedure to create serviceable items in Oracle Inventory that you can sell through Oracle iStore 11i.

Steps

1. Launch Oracle Forms by navigating to:

`http://<host>:<apache port>/`

and clicking on **Apps Logon Links > VIS Logon** through the Forms cartridge (UNIX).

2. Log in with the Inventory responsibility.
3. Choose **Inventory > Items > Master Items**.
The Organizations window opens.
4. Search for and highlight the master inventory organization, and click **OK**.
The Master Item window opens.
5. In the Item field, enter the item number.
6. In the Description field, enter the item description.
7. Click on the flexfield icon [] next to the Description field, and fill in the flexfields in the Items pop-up window that appears. When you are finished, return to the Master Item window.

8. In the Main tab, set Primary Unit of Measure to **Each** and Item Status to **Active**.
9. In the Inventory tab, check the Reservable checkbox.
10. In the Web Option tab, set Web Status to **Published** and check the Orderable On the Web checkbox.
11. In the Order Management tab, check the Customer Ordered, Customer Orders Enabled, and Shippable checkboxes.
12. Repeat the above steps for any subset inventory organizations in a multiple operating unit environment that should contain this serviceable item.
13. Next, create prices for this item in Oracle Pricing. See [Section 2.13.3, "Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing"](#) for more information.

2.13.2 Setting Up Service Items in Oracle Inventory

Follow this procedure to create service items in Oracle Inventory that you can sell through Oracle iStore 11i.

Steps

1. Launch Oracle Forms by navigating to:
`http://<host>:<apache port>/`
and clicking on **Apps Logon Links > VIS Logon** through the Forms cartridge (UNIX).
2. Verify the UOM Mappings for Period value (MTH) to be used when setting up a service item in Oracle Inventory, as follows:
 - a. Log in with the Corporate Contracts Manager responsibility.
 - b. Choose **Setup > Contract > Units of Measure > UOM > UOM**.
The Organizations window opens.
 - c. Search for and highlight the master inventory organization, and click **OK**.
The Units of Measure window opens.
 - d. Verify and/or create a record with the following values:
 - Name = Month
 - UOM = MTH
 - Description = Month

- Class = **Time**
- e. In the Navigator - Corporate Contracts Manager window, choose **Setup > Contract > Units of Measure > Time Units of Measure**.
The Map Time Units window opens.
- f. Verify and/or create a record with the following values:
 - User Unit = **Month**
 - Base Unit = **Month**
 - Conversion = 1
- 3. Switch to the Inventory responsibility.
- 4. Choose **Inventory > Items > Master Items**.
The Organizations window opens.
- 5. Search for and highlight the master inventory organization, and click **OK**.
The Master Item window opens.
- 6. In the Item field, enter the item number.
- 7. In the Description field, enter the item description.
- 8. Click on the flexfield icon [] next to the Description field, and fill in the flexfields in the Items pop-up window that appears. When you are finished, return to the Master Item window.
- 9. In the Main tab, set Primary Unit of Measure to **Month** and Item Status to **Active**.
- 10. In the Inventory tab, check the Reservable checkbox.
- 11. In the Service tab, check the Support Service checkbox.
- 12. In the Service Duration region of the Service tab, set Value to 12 and Period to **MTH** (Month).
- 13. In the Web Option tab, set Web Status to **Published** and check the Orderable On the Web checkbox.
- 14. In the Order Management tab, check the Customer Ordered, Customer Orders Enabled, and OE Transactable checkboxes.
- 15. Repeat the above steps for any subset inventory organizations in a multiple operating unit environment that should contain this service item.

16. Next, create prices for this item in Oracle Pricing. See [Section 2.13.3, "Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing"](#) for more information.

2.13.3 Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing

Use this procedure to set up prices for serviceable and service items in Oracle Pricing.

Prerequisites

The serviceable and service items have been created in Oracle Inventory.

Steps

1. Launch Oracle Forms by navigating to:
`http://<host>:<apache port>/`
and clicking on **Apps Logon Links > VIS Logon** through the Forms cartridge (UNIX).
2. Log in with the Oracle Pricing Manager responsibility.
3. Choose **Price Lists > Price List Setup**.
The Price Lists form opens.
4. Query by example for Name = the price list used in the specialty store that offers the item.
The price list appears in the Price Lists form.
5. Place your cursor in the Product Context column of the List Lines tab and click the New icon in the toolbar to create a new line for the item record.
6. For a serviceable item, create the item record with the following values in the specified columns:
 - a. Product Context = **Item**
 - b. Product Attribute = **Item Number**
 - c. Product Value = Enter the item number from Oracle Inventory, which appears in the Item field of the Master Items form for the item.
 - d. UOM = **Ea**
 - e. Line Type = **Price List Line**

- f. Application Method = **Unit Price**
 - g. Value = Enter your desired value.
 - h. Start Date = Enter the current date.
 - i. Precedence = Enter the item precedence.
 - j. [] = When you click in this field, the Additional Info for List Lines flexfield window opens. In the Web field, enter Y to show that the item is Web-enabled. Click **OK** to return to the Price Lists form.
7. For a service item, create the item record with the following values in the specified columns:
- a. Product Context = **Item**
 - b. Product Attribute = **Item Number**
 - c. Product Value = Enter the item number from Oracle Inventory, which appears in the Item field of the Master Items form for the item.
 - d. UOM = **MTH**
 - e. Line Type = **Price List Line**
 - f. Application Method = **Percent Price** or **Unit Price**
 - g. Value = Enter your desired percentage or value.
 - h. Start Date = Enter the current date.
 - i. Precedence = Enter the item precedence.
 - j. [] = When you click in this field, the Additional Info for List Lines flexfield window opens. In the Web field, enter Y to show that the item is Web-enabled. Click **OK** to return to the Price Lists form.
8. Click the Save icon in the toolbar to save the record.
9. Next, for a service item, follow the instructions in [Section 2.13.4, "Setting Up Service Items in AOL"](#) to create lookups for Oracle iStore 11i and set up the Oracle iStore 11i shopping cart pull-down menu for technical support.
- For a serviceable item, follow the procedure outlined in [Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#) to add the item to the specialty stores that should carry it.

2.13.4 Setting Up Service Items in AOL

Selling service items in your Oracle iStore 11i Web stores requires preliminary setup in AOL. Use the following procedure to create lookups for Oracle iStore 11i and set up the Oracle iStore 11i shopping cart pull-down menu for technical support.

Prerequisites

Service items have been set up in Oracle Inventory. See [Section 2.13.2, "Setting Up Service Items in Oracle Inventory"](#) for more information.

Prices for service items have been set up in Oracle Pricing. See [Section 2.13.3, "Setting Up Prices for Serviceable and Service Items in Oracle Pricing"](#) for more information.

Steps

1. In SQL*Plus, query the `mtl_system_items_b` table to find the `inventory_item_id` for the service item, as shown below:

```
$ sqlplus app/<apps_pwd>@<connect_string>
SQL> select inventory_item_id from mtl_system_items_b where organization_id
= <enter the organization ID value> and segment1 = 'support_item';
```

SQL*Plus returns the `inventory_item_id` value.

2. Launch Oracle Forms by navigating to:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/
```

and clicking on **Apps Logon Links > VIS Logon** through the Forms cartridge (UNIX).

3. Log in with the Application Developer responsibility.
4. Choose **Application > Lookups > Application Object Library**.
The Application Object Library Lookups form opens.
5. Query by example with Type = `IBE_SUPPORT_FOR_SHOP_CART`.
The Application Object Library Lookups form opens with the record for lookup type `IBE_SUPPORT_FOR_SHOP_CART`.
6. Add a line with the following values:
 - a. Code = Enter the `inventory_item_id` value returned by the SQL*Plus query.
 - b. Meaning = `Support`

- c. Description = Support
 - d. From = Enter the current date.
 - e. Enabled = Check this checkbox.
7. Add a line with the following values:
 - a. Code = NONE
 - b. Meaning = None
 - c. Description = No Service is Selected
 - d. From = Enter the current date.
 - e. Enabled = Check this checkbox.
8. Click the Save icon in the toolbar to save your changes.
9. Next, set the IBE: Use Support and IBE: Use Support Cart Level profile options to **Yes**. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information.

2.14 Defining Product Relationships

Relationships are used for merchandising, for example, to offer a substitute product for a product that is out of stock. Relationship types are used to create specific relationship rules that associate products, categories, and sections to other products, categories, and sections. One relationship type can contain either rules created using the rule builder or one SQL rule. It cannot contain both.

Note: Using SQL rules to define relationships by querying the database on particular fields is a method primarily used by Oracle Consulting or other highly technical personnel. Most store managers will use the mapping rules.

The mapping rules define relationships in a From-To form. The types of From and To objects can be categories (defined in Oracle Inventory), sections or hierarchies (defined in Oracle iStore 11i), or items (defined in Oracle Inventory). The application evaluates each mapping rule and inserts rows in a table maintaining the preevaluated relationships. For example, if you have a category with two products assigned in your From list and a section with four products assigned in your To list, then Oracle iStore 11i creates a total of eight product relationships.

Your business needs determine the creation of relationships.

Oracle iStore 11i ships with several seeded relationship types, listed under the Relationship tab. These seeded relationship types are also seeded in Oracle Inventory for Item Relationships.

If you use Oracle iStore 11i's Java API to retrieve related items given an item ID and a seeded relationship type, you will get related items defined in Oracle iStore 11i plus the ones defined in Inventory.

See [Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#) and [Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#) for procedures that build relationships.

2.14.1 Using Seeded Relationship Types

You can use Oracle iStore 11i's seeded relationship types to create product relationships.

Seeded Values

- RELATED: Entity B is related to Entity A.
- SUBSTITUTE: Entity B can be substituted for Entity A.
- CROSS_SELL: Entity B can be offered and sold along with Entity A
- UP_SELL: A newer version Entity B can be sold instead of Entity A.
- SERVICE: Entity B is a service item that can be added to the shopping cart for a serviceable Entity A.
- PREREQUISITE: Customer must have Entity B before purchasing Entity A.
- COLLATERAL: Entity B is collateral (e.g. marketing brochures) that exists for Entity A.
- SUPERSEDED: Entity B supersedes Entity A, which is no longer available.
- COMPLIMENTARY: Entity B is available free of charge with Entity A.
- IMPACT: Entity A is usable together with related Entity B, but only under certain conditions.
- CONFLICT: Entity A is not usable together with a related Entity B.
- MANDATORY_CHARGE: Mandatory charge
- OPTIONAL_CHARGE: Optional charge
- PROMOTIONAL_UPGRADE: Entity A ordered by the customer is upgraded to Entity B of equal or higher value, with no change to the price.

These relationship types are also seeded in Oracle Inventory for Item Relationships. If you use Oracle iStore 11i's Java Application Programming Interface (API) to retrieve related items given an item ID and a seeded relationship type, you will get related items defined in Oracle iStore 11i plus the ones defined in Oracle Inventory.

See [Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#) and [Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#) for more information.

Prerequisites

Products must exist in Oracle Inventory.

Steps

1. Go to the Relationship tab and review the seeded relationship types.
2. Click the name of a relationship type to create a relationship between items. For example, click SUBSTITUTE to make item B a substitute for item A if item A is out of stock.
3. Click **Add Rules**.
4. In the middle frame, search for the base product, and click the left arrow to add it to the From List.
5. Search for the related product, and click the right arrow to add it to the To List.
6. Click **Done** to save the relationship.

2.14.2 Creating Relationship Types

Use this procedure to define relationship types and add rules to them.

Prerequisites

Products must exist in Oracle Inventory.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. In the Relationship tab, choose **Create**.
The Create Relationship page appears.
3. In the Name field, enter the relationship type name.
Optional: In the Description field, enter a description. This enables a description-based search for the relationship type.

Optional: In the Start Date and End Date fields, enter a start date and an end date for the relationship type to be valid.

Click **Create**.

The relationship type has been created. The Relationship Detail page appears, where you can begin adding rules to the relationship type.

4. Choose to specify the pairs of related items by SQL query or by mapping rules and highlight the appropriate radio button. Click **Create Rule**.

The Add Rules page appears if you choose **Create Mapping Rules**.

The Relationship Detail page appears if you choose **Create a SQL Rule**.

5. If you choose **Create Mapping Rules**, proceed as follows:

- a. Conduct a search to view products, categories, or sections in the center table.

The search results appear in the table.

- b. Select the items in your search results that you want to be in the From side of your rule, and click the left arrow.

The selected items appear in the From List.

- c. Conduct a search to view products, categories, or sections in the center table.

The search results appear in the table.

- d. Select the items in your search results that you want to be in the To side of your rule, and click the right arrow.

The selected items appear in the To List.

- e. Repeat as needed to complete your From and To lists for this rule.

- f. Click **Done** to submit the relationship rule creation, or click **Preview Rules** to validate or exclude the relationship rules to be added.

If you click **Done**, the Relationship Detail page appears. The application generates a rule from every object in the From list to every object in the To list.

If you click **Preview Rules**, the Preview Rules Page appears. At this point the rules have not been added to the system. You may exclude any rules not needed. When finished, click **Done** to see the Relationship Detail page.

- g. From the Relationship Detail page, you may select a link for each rule to view all product to product relationships generated by that rule, or click **View All Results** to view all product to product relationships generated by all rules in this relationship type.

From either option, the Relationship Result screen displays the product-level relationship results.

If you do not want to include one or more of the generated rules, select **Exclude** and click **Update**.

The excluded product-level relationships can be re-included.

6. If you choose **Create a SQL Rule**, the following incomplete SQL displays on the Relationship Detail page:

```
Select msi.inventory_item_id
From mtl_system_items msi
Where
```

The SQL should return only the column `inventory_item_id` in the `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS` table. You can add as many tables as you want in the From list and add any conditions in the Where clause.

2.15 Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories

Every product is assigned or mapped to a category in Oracle Inventory. With customized multimedia, templates, and display styles, you can set up customized category-level defaults for products belonging to a category.

Use this procedure to modify defaults for categories. You can only specify defaults for categories belonging to the primary display category set (the value of the IBE: Category Set profile). If the product does not belong to any category in the primary display category set, then the store-level defaults are used.

Prerequisites

- Products must be assigned to categories in Oracle Inventory in order to be returned upon a search of those categories.
- Multimedia, templates, and styles must exist before you can assign them to a category.
- The IBE: Category Set profile must be set. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide, Release 11i* for details.

Steps

1. In the Category tab, search for categories by Category Name or Description.
The Categories page displays a list of item categories from Oracle Inventory which belong to the category set specified in the IBE: Category Set profile with related templates, display styles, and multimedia components.
2. Click the category name that you want to update.
The Templates Assigned page lists all template names and default source template files available for Web pages that display items in the chosen category.
3. In the Templates Assigned page that appears, perform the following steps to make a template available for association with a display style in this category:
 - a. Click **Add**.
A list of available template names appears.
 - b. Select a template.
 - c. Click **Add**. The pop-up box closes when you select **Done**.
4. In the Category tab, choose **Display Styles**.
The Display Styles page lists all display styles you defined in the Setup tab.
5. For each display style you can choose a template from the templates assigned to the category. Select **Update**.
In store Web pages related to this category that use a given display style, this template overrides the display style default template.
6. In the Category tab, choose **Multimedia Components**.
The Multimedia Components page lists all multimedia components that you defined in the Setup tab.
7. Optional: Assign multimedia names to multimedia components. Click **Update**.
In store Web pages related to this category, when a template accesses a multimedia component, the multimedia name selected here overrides the multimedia component's default multimedia setting. The multimedia name retrieves the media source file mapped to the specialty store and language used by the customer.

2.15.1 Viewing Template Details Assigned to a Category

You can view the template details that are assigned to a category by using the following procedure.

Steps

1. Choose the Category tab.

The Categories page opens.

2. Click the category name.

The Templates Assigned page opens, listing the template names, the default source files for all sites and languages for each template, and a description of each template.

2.15.2 Assigning a Template to a Category

To assign a template to a category, use the following procedure.

Steps

1. In the Category tab, click the name of the category to which the template is applicable.

The Templates Assigned page lists all template names and default source template files available for Web pages that display items in the chosen category.

2. In the Templates Assigned page that appears, perform the following steps to make a template available for association with a display style in this category:

- a. Click **Add**.

A list of available template names appears.

- b. Select a template.

- c. Click **Add**. The pop-up box closes when you select **Done**.

2.16 Setting Up Product Searches

Oracle iStore 11i's product search feature allows you to enable your customers to search a store for products they want to buy.

The product search feature in Oracle iStore 11i is implemented using the interMedia text search utility of the Oracle8i database. The product information (description and long description) is first loaded in an Oracle iStore 11i table (IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH) via the concurrent program iStore Search Insert. This step is generally performed after the merchant has loaded his inventory with products. Once the data is loaded, any change to product information is updated in the Oracle iStore 11i table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH through a database trigger call on the inventory table. This keeps product information current in the search table. Once the data is moved into the search table, the interMedia index is created to facilitate search capability of the keywords.

Note: You must ensure that both Oracle Inventory and Oracle interMedia are installed and configured properly before setting up store search. Refer to the Oracle interMedia documentation for details on how to set up and configure interMedia.

Storing Information in the Search Table

The search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH is a denormalized table of MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_TL and MTL_ITEM_CATEGORIES.

The core text on which you search is stored in a Clob called INDEXED_SEARCH. Currently it stores a concatenation of name and description of products. The table also stores inventory_item_id, organizationId, category_id, category_set_id, and the Web status field from MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B table.

Searchable Product Attributes

Searches are performed on the name and description of a product. They are stored as description and long description columns in MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_TL table.

Search Dependencies

The product search requires version 8.1.7 of the Oracle database with the interMedia option installed. It also requires the 11i version of the Oracle Inventory schema.

Note: For enhanced query performance, enable caching of large object data for the interMedia DR\$R table.

2.16.1 Setting Up Oracle Inventory for Product Search

First, set up your inventory, under a common master org ID. Points to remember while setting up your inventory include:

- Give products unique names.
- Do not leave category names (concatenated segments) blank or non-unique. They can be null or non-unique in the database, but show as blanks or multiple times in the Categories LOV in your customer home page.
- Make sure the products have the WEB_STATUS flag in the MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table set to PUBLISHED. You can also query this field by examining the web_status column of the item.

Next, set the iStore profile options for search.

2.16.2 Setting Search Profile Options

Oracle iStore 11i search needs four iStore (IBE) profile options to be set. The following table lists these profile options with their descriptions.

Table 2-3 Search Profile Options

Profile Option	Description
Enable Fuzzy Search	If set to Yes , allows users to perform fuzzy product searches, so that they do not have to type in the exact spelling of their search criteria to retrieve results that match these criteria. If this profile option is not set, it defaults to No .
No of Results in Search	This option sets the maximum cap on the search results. For example, if the user searches for a very common keyword (not in the stop words list), then the search process will stop after the max cap set as per this profile option. If this profile option is not set, then the code default of 200 results is used.
Search Lines Per Page	This option sets the number of lines to be displayed per page. If this profile option is not set, the code default of 20 lines is used.

Table 2–3 Search Profile Options

Profile Option	Description
Use Category Search	<p>This option determines whether the home page pull-down search menu will allow category or section level searching. Yes will cause the pull-down menu to list categories with publishable items, while No will cause it to list the minisite's top level sections. A null value will enable a basic search against all products in the current minisite.</p> <p>You must set this profile option to Yes if the IBE: Use CABO UI profile option is set to No.</p>

Decide to enable either category or section level searches from the Customer UI home page pull-down menu, then carry out the appropriate procedure to populate the search table with data and create the interMedia text index.

Note: Section-level and basic searches are not supported if the IBE: Use CABO UI profile is set to **No**. If you choose to set this profile to **No**, you must set the IBE: Use Category Search profile to **Yes** to enable category-level search.

2.16.3 Populating the Oracle iStore 11i Search Table for Category Level Search

To enable category-level search on the Customer UI, the iStore Search Insert program only needs to be run once to populate the search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH. After this one-time product data load, the table will get updated product information through a database trigger call on the inventory table.

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms as SYSADMIN.
2. Choose the **iStore Concurrent Programs Manager** responsibility. (If you do not have this responsibility, use the System Administrator responsibility to grant it to yourself.)
3. In the pop-up window, choose **Single Request**, and click **OK**.
4. Click the LOV button in the Name field, and choose **iStore Search Insert**.
5. Click **Submit** to start the concurrent request. Note the request ID.

You can monitor the progress of your request by looking at the request log and output files in `$COMMON_TOP/admin/log/l<request ID>.log` and `$COMMON_TOP/admin/out/o<request ID>.out`, respectively.

You can also view the request status by selecting View Requests and searching by the request ID.

Note: You will only be able to search for products whose WEB_STATUS is PUBLISHED.

This process can take a substantial amount of time, depending on the number of items you have. As an estimate, for about 300,000 items in inventory this program can take about 45 minutes to run.

The concurrent manager calls the iStore Search Insert program, which moves the product data from the inventory table to the Oracle iStore 11i search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH. When this job is running, the search tables are purged and the product search does not work correctly on the store.

Caution: Since this batch job deletes data from the search table, the rollback segment should be large enough for the process to complete.

Once the request is complete, you can search for products based on name and description. The pull-down search menu on the store's home page lists categories with publishable items. If additional product attributes are to be added in the search, this SQL script needs to be modified to add the extra search column.

2.16.4 Populating the Oracle iStore 11i Search Table for Section Level Search

To enable section level search on the Customer UI for the first time, run the iStore Search Insert program first, then run the iStore Section Search Refresh program to populate the search table IBE_SECTION_SEARCH.

Whenever you update the Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy, rerun only the iStore Section Search Refresh program to update the search table IBE_SECTION_SEARCH.

Steps

1. Carry out the procedure outlined in [Section 2.16.3, "Populating the Oracle iStore 11i Search Table for Category Level Search"](#) to load data into the main search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH.
2. In the **iStore Concurrent Programs Manager** responsibility, choose **Single Request** and click **OK**.
3. Click the LOV button in the Name field, and choose **iStore Section Search Refresh**.
4. Click **Submit** to start the concurrent request. Note the request ID.

The concurrent manager calls the iStore Section Search Refresh program, which populates the search table IBE_SECTION_SEARCH with product data. The product search is still available to customers while the iStore Section Search Refresh program is running.

Once the request is complete, the pull-down search menu on the store's home page lists the top level sections, not the product categories.

2.16.5 Changing Between Category Level Search and Section Level Search

To change the listings in the pull-down search menu from categories to sections or vice versa, rerun the iStore Search Insert concurrent program to ensure that product listings will not be duplicated.

Prerequisites

Change the IBE: Use Category Search profile option to **Yes** if you are changing to the category-level search. Change the profile option to **No** if you are changing to the section-level search.

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms as SYSADMIN.
2. Choose the **iStore Concurrent Programs Responsibility**. (If you do not have this responsibility, use the System Administrator responsibility to grant it to yourself.)
3. In the pop-up window, choose **Single Request**, and click **OK**.
4. Click the LOV button in the Name field, and choose **iStore Search Insert**.
5. Click **Submit** to start the concurrent request. Note the request ID.

You can monitor the progress of your request by looking at the request log and output files in `$COMMON_TOP/admin/log/l<request ID>.log` and `$COMMON_TOP/admin/out/o<request ID>.out`, respectively.

You can also view the request status by selecting View Requests and searching by the request ID.

If you are changing the search from section level to category level, the pull-down search menu lists categories once the request is completed.

If you are changing the search from category level to section level, perform the following steps after the request is completed:

6. In the **iStore Concurrent Programs Responsibility**, choose **Single Request** and click **OK**.
7. Click the LOV button in the Name field, and choose **iStore Section Search Refresh**.
8. Click **Submit** to start the concurrent request. Note the request ID.

The pull-down search menu lists the top-level sections once the request is complete.

2.16.6 Enabling a Fuzzy Search

The fuzzy search functionality returns search results with product names that do not match the spelling of the users' search criteria exactly. For example, if a user enters "laptops" or "laptp," the search retrieves product names with the word "laptop."

The fuzzy search works only for the base language of your installation of Oracle applications. It does not produce results for other languages in a multilingual instance, due to the current version of Oracle interMedia.

You can enable the fuzzy search functionality by setting the profile option IBE: Enable Fuzzy Search to **Yes** and running the iStore Search Insert concurrent program, as well as the iStore Section Search Refresh concurrent program if you have enabled section-level searches. Every time you change the value of the IBE: Enable Fuzzy Search profile option, you must rerun the iStore search concurrent programs.

2.16.7 Creating Search Index Tables

To be able to run external procedures to create a search index table, please ensure that ENV5 is included in your SID_DESC part of listener.ora as follows:

Steps

1. Go to 8.1.7 ORACLE_HOME:

```
cd /u02/visappl
ksh
. ./APPSORA.env
cd $ORACLE_HOME/./8.1.7/network/admin
```

This directory should contain listener.ora.

2. Verify that listener.ora contains the following:

```
(SID_DESC =
  (SID_NAME = PLSExtProc)
  (ORACLE_HOME = /u04/visora/8.1.7)
  (ENV5 = LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/u04/visora/8.1.7/ctx/lib)
  (PROGRAM = extproc)
)
```

3. Before creating the search index table, make sure that the Oracle interMedia server is up. Use the following command to check:

```
$ ps -ef | grep ctxsrv
```

If it is not running, start the Oracle interMedia server as follows:

4. Go to 8.1.7 ORACLE_HOME:

```
cd /u02/visappl
ksh
. ./APPSORA.env
cd $ORACLE_HOME/./8.1.7
. ./VIS.env
```

This will set up 8.1.7 ORACLE_HOME env.

5. Run the following command:

```
ctxsrv -user ctxsys/ctxsys&
```

2.16.8 PL/SQL and Java/JSPs Used in Search

The following program units are used in product search process:

- java/catalog/Search.java (main Java program that executes the query)
- ibecksr3.jsp (search result JSP)
- ibeCZzdMenu.jsp (main home page)
- ibeckskrf.jsp (search result JSP)
- IBEVCSMV.sql (one time load of product descriptions through concurrent manager)
- IBEVCSKS.pls (package specification)
- IBEVCSKB.pls (package body)
- IBEVIDTS.pls (package specification for the main database trigger)
- IBEVIDTB.pls (package body for the main database trigger)
- java/catalog/PrdRec.java (definition of search result object)
- IBEVCSIS.pls (package specification for section search package)
- IBEVCSIB.pls (package body for section search package)
- ibecsmcr.sql (maintains availability of product search functionality during iStore Section Search Refresh)

2.16.9 Customizing Search

If you need to add more attributes of the item to search for, you must modify IBEVCSMV.sql for the initial load and the PL/SQL triggers mentioned above to make sure that updates to these attributes get propagated to the search table.

1. Modify the search package (IBEVCSKS.pls and IBEVCSKB.pls) for adding the additional product search attributes. By default, only the product name (description column) and product description (long description column) are included in the search.

If additional attributes are to be added in the product search, the parameters for the package specification and body will have to be changed accordingly, with the new attributes. This package moves the subsequent changes in the product information, to Oracle iStore 11i's search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH. Any insert, delete, or update on MTL_ITEM_CATEGORIES, any delete or update on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B and any insert, delete, or update on MTL_SYSTEM_

ITEMS_TL table will move the change to the search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH through this procedure. This procedure is called from the main database trigger procedures, as explained in the next step.

2. If new parameters are added to the search package, the call to the search package must be modified in the main database trigger package IBEVIDTB.plb to include the new parameters added to the search move procedures. This package body calls all of Oracle iStore 11i's ERP-related database trigger procedures, including the search package procedures.
3. The database trigger on the product tables calls the main database trigger package to move the product data change to the Oracle iStore 11i search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH.

However, modifying the search package call will not recreate the interMedia index to include the changed information in the search table IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH. Administrators must rebuild the interMedia search index every time a new product is added or an existing product is changed/deleted. This can be achieved by recreating the interMedia index IBE_CT_IMEDIA_SEARCH_IM through the Oracle Enterprise Manager utility or through executing the command "CTX_DDL.SYNC_INDEX" in SQL*Plus. Note that you should have privileges to alter the interMedia index. After this step, the modified product information is visible in the Oracle iStore 11i product search process.

2.16.10 Adding Stopwords to Searches

There are many search words such as "and," "oracle," "if," and "then" which are very common and will return numerous search results. Search results may not be relevant to the user's query if such common search keywords are used. In addition, searches on common keywords use processing resources and slow down performance. These common keywords can be excluded from the search by using the "Stop Words" utility in interMedia.

Log in to Oracle Enterprise Manager as CTXSYS to see the stop words in the Stop List. Additional stop keywords can be added to the stop list.

iStore Search Query

```
createQueryString(String keywords,
String operator,
String notKeywords,
String categoryId,
String maxRowNum,
String selectList,
```

```
String orderByList,
String whereList)

select i.inventory_item_id, i.description, i.category_id,
       score(100) nearness
from ibe_ct_imedia_search i, mtl_system_items_b b
where contains (i.indexed_search, 'laptop' , 100) > 0
and i.language = userenv('LANG')
and i.category_id = i.category_id
and i.organization_id = 204
and exists (
    select 1
    from jtf_dsp_section_items s, jtf_dsp_msite_sct_items b
    where s.section_item_id = b.section_item_id
    and b.mini_site_id = 10120
    and s.inventory_item_id = i.inventory_item_id
    and (s.end_date_active > sysdate or s.end_date_active is null)
    and s.start_date_active < sysdate
)
and rownum < 200
and i.inventory_item_id = b.inventory_item_id
and i.organization_id = b.organization_id
order by SCORE(100)
/
```

2.17 Customizing the Shopping Cart

You can customize shopping cart pages in the following ways:

- [Enabling Unit of Measure \(UOM\) Conversions](#)
- [Allowing Decimal Quantities for Items](#)
- [Specifying Flexfields At the Checkout Page](#)
- [Setting Up Credit Card Payments in Oracle iStore 11i](#)

2.17.1 Enabling Unit of Measure (UOM) Conversions

Oracle Pricing handles UOM conversions. The Pricing engine will only do UOM conversions if the Primary UOM Code checkbox is checked for the item in the Price List Setup window.

UOM Conversion Example

The primary UOM of Item X is Each and a conversion of 12 Each = 1 Dozen has been set up in Inventory. When pricing Item X, Oracle iStore 11i calls the Pricing engine passing in (Item X, Each) and (Item X, Dozen). The price list has a price for (Item X, Each).

- If the price list also contains (Item X, Dozen), the price for (Item X, Dozen) is returned.
- If the price list does not contain (Item X, Dozen) and the Primary UOM Code checkbox is checked for (Item X, Each), the price returned is 12 times the price of (Item X, Each).
- If the price list does not contain (Item X, Dozen) and the Primary UOM Code checkbox is not checked for (Item X, Dozen), an error is returned.

2.17.2 Allowing Decimal Quantities for Items

When adding an item or updating its quantity in the Oracle iStore 11i shopping cart, the customer can enter a decimal quantity if it is supported by the item. Oracle iStore 11i calls the same API used by Order Management for validating quantity. If an item is marked OM Indivisible, decimal quantities are not allowed for its primary UOM.

To prevent the customer from selecting a decimal quantity of an item, follow this procedure:

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms.
2. Choose Inventory responsibility.
3. Choose Master Items.
4. Choose the appropriate inventory organization (the same as the Oracle iStore 11i Item Validation Organization).
5. Query for the item.

6. Click on the Physical Attributes tab.
7. Check **OM Indivisible**.
8. Repeat for all inventory organizations that contain the item.

To allow the customer to select a decimal quantity of an item, follow the previous steps, but uncheck **OM Indivisible**.

2.17.3 Specifying Flexfields At the Checkout Page

Oracle iStore 11i allows addition of flexfields to the checkout page and saves the information they contain to the quote. It passes the content of a flexfield on to Order Management as a comment in a non-validated field. For example, you can set up a flexfield for the sales representative that will go to Order Management as a comment that Order Administration will use to assign the correct sales representative ID.

Specify flexfields at the checkout page using the following procedure.

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms.
2. Choose the Application Developer responsibility.
3. Choose **Flexfield > Description > Segments** to open the Descriptive Flexfields window.
4. Choose **View > Find**, and query for the flexfield with `Application = Oracle Order Capture` and `Title = Header: Additional Information`.

Set up flexfield segments. For example, map "Sales Rep Email" to "ATTRIBUTE1."

5. Query for the flexfield with `Application = Oracle Order Management` and `Title = Additional Header Information`.

Set up flexfield segments. For example, map "Sales Rep Email" to "ATTRIBUTE1."

Confirm the following:

- The same database columns are in use for both the Order Capture and Order Management flexfield segments (ATTRIBUTE1 in the previous example).

- The usage in Order Capture does not conflict with other flexfield definitions in Order Management.
 - Only global segments of a flexfield are supported.
6. Test your checkout page using the following steps:
 - a. Checkout a shopping cart and proceed to the "Payment And Billing Information" page.
 - b. You should see "Sales Rep Email" field under "Additional Information." You may enter information in this field, then continue.
 - c. After your order is created, go to Forms and check if the Sales Rep Email flexfield information is present in both Order Capture and Order Management Forms.
 7. Customize the prompts for the flexfields.

The default prompt title is, "Additional Information." To change it, log in to Forms and use `fnd_message: IBE_PRMT_ORD_FLEX_TITLE`.

The default additional instruction is, "Please fill in the following fields." To change it, log in to Forms and use `fnd_message: IBE_PRMT_ORD_FLEX_DESCR`.

2.17.4 Setting Up Credit Card Payments in Oracle iStore 11i

Use the following procedure to set up credit card payment functionality in Oracle iStore 11i.

Steps

1. Log in to Oracle Forms as SYSADMIN.
2. Under System Administrator Responsibility, choose **(Navigation) Profile/System**.
3. Query Application = `iStore`, User = `ibe_customer`, and set the following profile values at the iStore application level:
 - a. iStore Setup Profiles
 - Set the IBE: Authorize Payment Offline During Normal Checkout profile option to **No** to allow only online authorization.
 - Set the IBE: Finalize Order On Error in Authorize Payment profile option to **Yes** to submit orders even if the authorize payment error is a system error.

b. Order Capture Setup Profiles

Set the ASO: Credit Card Authorization profile option to **No** at the iStore application level only. (Do not set this profile at responsibility and user level).

4. Set up Oracle Receivables as follows:

Make sure Merchant ID is assigned to receipt method.

a. Log in to **Receivables Manager Responsibility > Setup > Receipt > Receipt classes.**

b. Query the receipt method with Name = Credit Card.

Make sure the Merchant ID field has the same value as the Payee ID of Oracle iPayment. (The Merchant ID is the ID that identifies your business through the Oracle iPayment server by Payment System, Credit Card Vendors and Banks. The Merchant ID that you provide in your receipt class is the same as the Payee ID that you have defined in the iPayment Administration).

5. Set up Oracle iPayment as follows:

a. Perform the manual post-installation configurations steps described in Chapter 2 of *Oracle iPayment Implementation Guide*. You should also be familiar with typical Oracle iPayment Administration operations, which are documented in *Oracle iPayment Concepts and Procedures*.

b. To integrate Oracle iPayment with Oracle iStore 11i, perform the following steps when you create a payee:

- Go to the Oracle iPayment UI Administration screen.
- Click the Payee Tab.
- Click the **Create** button.
- Fill in the form.

Payee Identifier should have the same value as the Merchant ID in Accounts Receivable, or else integration will fail.

- Click the **Credit Card** check box.
- Click the **Create** button at the end of the page to save the record.

Oracle iStore 11i uses customers' account ID numbers to store and track their credit card numbers in the AP_bank_Account_uses_All table, as per the TCA model and inline with the Oracle Receivables Forms UI.

2.18 Testing The Store

Test the storefront with the following URL:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/ibeCZzpHome.jsp?minisite=<minisite ID>
```

where <minisite ID> is the ID of the specialty store created above. You can determine the minisite ID using the following procedure.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI and enter the Setup tab.
2. In the Specialty Stores screen, click the name of the specialty store that you want to test.

The Specialty Store Detail Basic Information screen appears.

3. Look at the URL of this screen. It will be in this format:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfmbas.jsp?ID=<minisite ID>&ACTION=VIEW
```

The specialty store ID is the number that appears in the place of <minisite ID> in this URL.

You can use the Preview feature of Oracle iStore 11i to preview the appearance of products and sections in the Customer UI before publishing them for your customers. Assign multimedia components, display styles, and categories to your products and sections, and set their statuses to Unpublished. Unpublished products and sections appear in the Customer UI only if the user has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility. Next, launch the Customer UI, log in to the appropriate specialty store using a store manager user account, and navigate to the items or sections. After viewing the items or sections, return to the Merchant UI. Here, you can make additional changes or publish the items or sections.

Administering Oracle iStore 11i

This chapter describes the administration of Oracle iStore 11i. Administering Oracle iStore 11i involves the following tasks:

- [Roles and Permissions for Oracle iStore 11i Users](#)
- [Setting Up Oracle iStore 11i Customer Types](#)
- [Setting Up B2B Users](#)
- [Managing the Cache](#)

3.1 Roles and Permissions for Oracle iStore 11i Users

Oracle iStore 11i is seeded with various roles that you can assign to different types of users. Each of these roles has a different combination of permissions.

You cannot use roles and permissions for B2C customers.

You can view these permissions and roles using the following procedure.

Steps

1. Log in to the Oracle CRM Applications login page at the following URL as SYSADMIN:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfllogin.jsp
```

2. Enter the Security tab.
3. Choose the Permissions sub-tab.

The Permissions screen appears with a list of all Oracle CRM permissions. The Oracle iStore 11i permissions begin with "IBE."

4. Choose the Roles sub-tab.

The Roles screen appears with a list of all Oracle CRM roles. The Oracle iStore 11i roles begin with "IBE."

The following table summarizes the Oracle iStore 11i permissions.

Table 3-1 Oracle iStore 11i Permissions

Name	Description
IBE_ALLOW_PRICE_OVERRIDE	Allows the user to override prices manually
IBE_ASSIGN_SALES_CREDITS	Allows a user to assign sales credits
IBE_BILLTO_ANY_ACCOUNT	Allows a user to search on and retrieve all existing customers rather than only those with an existing billing relationship with the sold-to customer
IBE_CHANGE_BILLTO_CONTACT	Allows a user to change the bill-to contact from the default (if any) bill-to contact
IBE_CHANGE_BILLTO_CUSTOMER	Allows a user to change the bill-to customer from the default bill-to customer
IBE_CHANGE_SHIPTO_CONTACT	Allows a user to change the ship-to contact from the default (if any) ship-to contact
IBE_CHANGE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER	Allows a user to change the ship-to customer from the default ship-to customer
IBE_CREATE_ADDRESS	Not used in Release 11i
IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CONTACT	Allows the user to create a new contact for the bill-to customer who will have a bill-to relationship with the bill-to customer
IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS	Allows the user to create a new address associated with the bill-to contact which will have a bill-to relationship with the bill-to contact
IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CUSTOMER	Allows a user to create a new customer with a billing relationship to the sold-to customer
IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CUSTOMER_ADDRESS	Allows the user to create a new address associated with the bill-to customer which will have a bill-to relationship with the bill-to customer
IBE_CREATE_ORDER	Allows a user to submit a quote or cart as an order

Table 3–1 Oracle iStore 11i Permissions (Cont.)

Name	Description
IBE_CREATE_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT	Not used in Release 11i
IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT	Allows the user to create a new contact for the ship-to customer who will have a ship-to relationship with the ship-to customer
IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS	Allows the user to create a new address associated with the ship-to contact which will have a ship-to relationship with the ship-to contact
IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER	Allows a user to create a new customer with a shipping relationship to the sold-to customer
IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER_ADDRESS	Allows the user to create a new address associated with the ship-to customer which will have a ship-to relationship with the ship-to customer
IBE_CREATE_SOLDTO_CUSTOMER	Allows a user to create a new customer in the context of assigning a sold-to customer during quote creation
IBE_MODIFY_CART	Not used in Release 11i
IBE_MODIFY_ORDER	Not used in Release 11i
IBE_SHIPTO_ANY_ACCOUNT	Allows a user to search on and retrieve all existing customers rather than only those with an existing shipping relationship with the sold-to customer
IBE_USER_ADMIN	Allows a user to create additional users for his or her organization
IBE_USE_ATTACHMENT	Allows the user to use attachments
IBE_USE_PRICING_AGREEMENT	Allows the user to use pricing agreements
IBE_VIEW_ADDRESS	Not used in Release 11i
IBE_VIEW_CUST_WITHOUT_ACCOUNT	Allows a user to search on and retrieve existing customers without an account
IBE_VIEW_INVOICE	Allows a user to view invoices, related to the entire organization, through Order Tracker
IBE_VIEW_ORDER	Allows a user to view orders, placed on behalf of the entire organization, through Order Tracker

Table 3–1 Oracle iStore 11i Permissions (Cont.)

Name	Description
IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT	Allows a user to view payments, related to the entire organization, through Order Tracker
IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT	Not used in Release 11i

The following table lists the seeded Oracle iStore 11i user roles and shows the permissions that are assigned by default to each role.

Table 3–2 Oracle iStore 11i User Roles

Name	Description	Default Permissions
IBE_BUSINESS_USER_ROLE	Business User Role	IBE_CREATE_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_ORDER IBE_CREATE_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_MODIFY_CART IBE_MODIFY_ORDER IBE_VIEW_ADDRESS IBE_VIEW_INVOICE IBE_VIEW_ORDER IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT

Table 3–2 Oracle iStore 11i User Roles (Cont.)

Name	Description	Default Permissions
IBE_PRIMARY_USER_ROLE	Primary User Role	IBE_CREATE_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_ORDER IBE_CREATE_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_MODIFY_CART IBE_MODIFY_ORDER IBE_USER_ADMIN IBE_VIEW_ADDRESS IBE_VIEW_INVOICE IBE_VIEW_ORDER IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT

Table 3–2 Oracle iStore 11i User Roles (Cont.)

Name	Description	Default Permissions
IBE_RESELLER_ROLE	Reseller Role	IBE_CHANGE_SHIPTO_CONTACT IBE_CHANGE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER IBE_CREATE_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_BILLTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_ORDER IBE_CREATE_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CONTACT_ADDRESS IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER IBE_CREATE_SHIPTO_CUSTOMER_ADDRESS IBE_MODIFY_CART IBE_MODIFY_ORDER IBE_SHIPTO_ANY_ACCOUNT IBE_USE_ATTACHMENT IBE_USE_PRICING_AGREEMENT IBE_VIEW_ADDRESS IBE_VIEW_INVOICE IBE_VIEW_ORDER IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT IBE_VIEW_PAYMENT_INSTRUMENT

IBE_BUSINESS_USER_ROLE and IBE_PRIMARY_USER_ROLE are appropriate for assignment to B2B customer users.

Note: The B2B role for previous releases, IBE_DEFAULT_ROLE, is also seeded in Oracle iStore 11i with identical permissions to IBE_BUSINESS_USER_ROLE, for backward compatibility.

IBE_RESELLER_ROLE has quote creation permissions, but does not allow the quote creator to view all customer accounts in your records, bill to anyone other than the sold-to customer, or sell to customers who are not in your records. It is appropriate for assignment to resellers and others who sell your products but are not internal to your organization.

See *Oracle HTML Quoting Implementation Guide* for more information about the Oracle HTML Quoting role IBE_SALESREP_ROLE, which also uses Oracle iStore 11i permissions.

3.2 Setting Up Oracle iStore 11i Customer Types

There are three basic Oracle iStore 11i customer types:

- Guest users
- Registered B2C users
- Registered B2B users

Guest users (also called walk-in or unregistered users) can browse Web store catalogs and create shopping carts. However, they cannot set up a user profile, save a shopping cart, create a shopping list, submit an order, or access other Web store functionality until they register. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for details about how Oracle iStore 11i treats a guest user, and instructions for defining the guest user account.

Registered B2C users are individual customers. When they register in a Web store, they are immediately approved and can place orders in the Web store on their own behalf.

Registered B2B users represent customer organizations. When they register in a Web store, they must be approved by you or another merchant representative before they can act as registered users in the Web store. You can give them different levels of permission, including a permission to create B2B users for their organizations who do not need merchant approval. See [Section 3.3, "Setting Up B2B Users"](#) for more information.

3.2.1 Setting Default Customer Roles

You can specify the role assigned by default to new B2B customers.

You cannot assign default roles to new B2C customers.

B2B customers who are created in a Web store by B2B administrative users for their organizations are automatically assigned the B2B default customer role set here.

Steps

1. Log in as SYSADMIN to the Oracle CRM Applications login page at:

`http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfllogin.jsp`

2. In the Registration tab, click the Default Roles link.

The Groups screen appears.

3. To specify the default role assigned to new B2B customers, follow these steps:

- a. Select **Business User** from the User Type pull-down menu.
- b. In the Available Roles list, highlight the role that you want to assign by default to new B2B customers and click the ">" button.

In the Assigned Roles list, remove the role that you do not want to assign by default to new B2B customers by highlighting the role and clicking the "<" button.

Click **Update** to save your changes.

3.2.2 Setting Default Customer Responsibilities

You must specify the responsibility assigned by default to a new customer upon registration in a Web store. You can assign a default responsibility for both new B2B and B2C customers.

Steps

1. Log in as SYSADMIN to the Oracle CRM Applications login page at:

`http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfllogin.jsp`

2. In the Registration tab, click the Default Responsibility link.

The Register Default Responsibility screen appears.

3. Select **Business User** or **End User** from the Account Type pull-down menu to specify whether you are setting a default responsibility for B2B or B2C customers, respectively.

The Register Default Responsibility screen refreshes with values for the specific Account Type in the pull-down menus.

4. Choose the customer's default responsibility in the Default Responsibility Id pull-down menu. This can be **IBE_CUSTOMER** or another customer responsibility that you create.

See *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11i* for information on creating additional responsibilities.

5. Click **Submit** to save the settings.

3.3 Setting Up B2B Users

B2B users are representatives of a customer organization. All purchases by B2B users will be assigned to their organizations' accounts.

When customers register as B2B users through the Web stores, you can assign them specific B2B roles that determine the permissions they have in the Web stores. You can use the seeded Oracle iStore 11i roles or create new B2B roles with various combinations of the Oracle iStore 11i B2B permissions.

Seeded B2B Role Values

- IBE_BUSINESS_USER_ROLE
- IBE_PRIMARY_USER_ROLE

The IBE_PRIMARY_USER_ROLE has permissions identical to those of IBE_BUSINESS_USER_ROLE, with the addition of the IBE_USER_ADMIN permission. See [Section 3.1, "Roles and Permissions for Oracle iStore 11i Users"](#) for a list of these permissions.

If you give a B2B user a role with the IBE_USER_ADMIN permission, the B2B user can create more users for his or her organization in the Web store without the Oracle iStore 11i system administrator's approval. A B2B user with the IBE_USER_ADMIN permission can also assign B2B roles to the users he or she creates, and define new B2B user roles with unique sets of permissions.

When a B2B user logs in, links to the User Management and Role Management pages in the My Account screen are available.

Figure 3–1 The B2B User's My Account Page

The screenshot displays the Oracle iStore user interface. At the top left is the Oracle iStore logo. On the top right, there are icons for Shopping Cart, My Account, Order Tracker, and Help. Below these are navigation tabs for Home, Books, Music, Electronics, and Computers. A dark blue navigation bar contains links for User Information, Express Checkout Preferences, User Management, and Role Management. Below this is a search bar with a dropdown menu set to 'All Products', a text input field, and a 'Go' button with a link to 'Advanced Search'. On the left side, there is a 'User Information' sidebar with links for Personal Information, Change Password, Address Book, Payment Book, and Preferences. The main content area is titled 'Personal Information' and contains the following fields:

- * First Name: B2B
- Middle Name: (empty)
- * Last Name: User
- * Email: b2buser@samplecorp.c
- In addition to Order Status Alerts, I would like to receive important information on exclusive Store specials, promotions and events.
- Daytime Phone Number ()) Ext. ()
- Evening Phone Number ()) Ext. ()
- Fax Number ()) Ext. ()

 An 'Update' button is located at the bottom of the form.

The User Management page allows B2B administrative users to create B2B users for their organizations who do not need approval from the Oracle iStore 11i system administrator, and to specify roles for these users.

Note: A B2B administrative user can view all B2B users for his or her organization, even if he or she did not create them. However, the B2B administrative user sees role assignments only for the roles that he or she has. If a B2B administrative user views B2B users in the User Management screen who have roles that he or she does not have, these role assignments will not appear in the B2B users' role details. Instead, IBE_DEFAULT_ROLE is checked as the role assignment.

Figure 3–2 The B2B Administrative User's User Management Page

ORACLE
iStore

Shopping Cart My Account Order Tracker Help

Home Books Music Electronics Computers

User Information Express Checkout Preferences **User Management** Role Management

Quick Search All Products Go [Advanced Search](#)

Users

First Name	Middle Name	Last Name	Email	Username	Password
B2B		User	b2buser@samplecorp.com	A_B2B_USER	<input type="password"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>

[First](#) | [Previous](#) 1 - 1 of 1 [Next](#) | [Last](#)

The Role Management page allows B2B administrative users to view available roles, define new roles, and set permissions for existing roles.

Note: In the Role Management page, the B2B administrative users can see the Oracle iStore 11i seeded B2B roles that are assigned to them. Although there are Remove checkboxes for these seeded roles, the B2B administrative users should not delete these roles. Deleting the roles in the Role Management page will also delete them from all other Oracle iStore 11i B2B users' accounts.

Figure 3–3 The B2B Administrative User's Role Management Page

ORACLE
iStore

Shopping Cart My Account Order Tracker Help

Home Books Music Electronics Computers

User Information Express Checkout Preferences User Management **Role Management**

Quick Search All Products Go [Advanced Search](#)

Roles

Remove	Name	Description
<input type="checkbox"/>	IBE_DEFAULT_ROLE	Default Role
<input type="checkbox"/>	IBE_NEW_USER_ROLE	New User Role
<input type="checkbox"/>	IBE_PRIMARY_USER_ROLE	Primary User Role
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

First | Previous 1 - 3 of 3 Next | Last

Although the User Management and Role Management links appear in the My Account screen for B2B non-administrative users, they receive a message saying they are not authorized to access these pages if they click on the links.

3.3.1 Creating B2B User Roles

Use the following procedure to create new B2B roles with any set of permissions that you wish to specify.

Steps

1. Log in to the JTF login page at the following URL as SYSADMIN:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtflogin.jsp
```
2. Enter the Security tab.
3. Click on the Roles link.

The Roles screen appears with a list of existing JTF roles, and rows of text fields where you can enter B2B user role names and descriptions.

Figure 3–4 The Merchant's Roles Screen

ORACLE
Oracle Applications

Setup Diagnostics Tuning Profile Sign Out Help

Users Registration Security Payment Processing Advanced

Permissions Roles Data

Quick Find jtfmserver Go

Roles

Remove	Name	Description	Data
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_CUSTOMER_READ_ONLY	DMS Defect Customer read only	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_INTERNAL_READ_ONLY	DMS Defect Internal read only	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_KB_SUBMIT	DMS Defect KB Submit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_MASS_UPDATE_ADMIN	DMS Defect Mass Update Admin	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_MASS_UPDATE_REG	DMS Defect Mass Update Regular	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_RESOLUTION	DMS Defect Resolution Update	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_DEFECT_USER	DMS Typical Defect User	
<input type="checkbox"/>	CSS_DEF_ENH_CUSTOMER_READ_ONLY	DMS Enhancement Customer read only	
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

<First <<Previous 1 - 10 of 35 Next>> Last>

Update Restore

- In the first text field in the Name column, enter a name for the B2B user role you are creating.

In the adjacent text field in the Description column, enter a description of the user role.

Do not select the checkbox in the Data column.

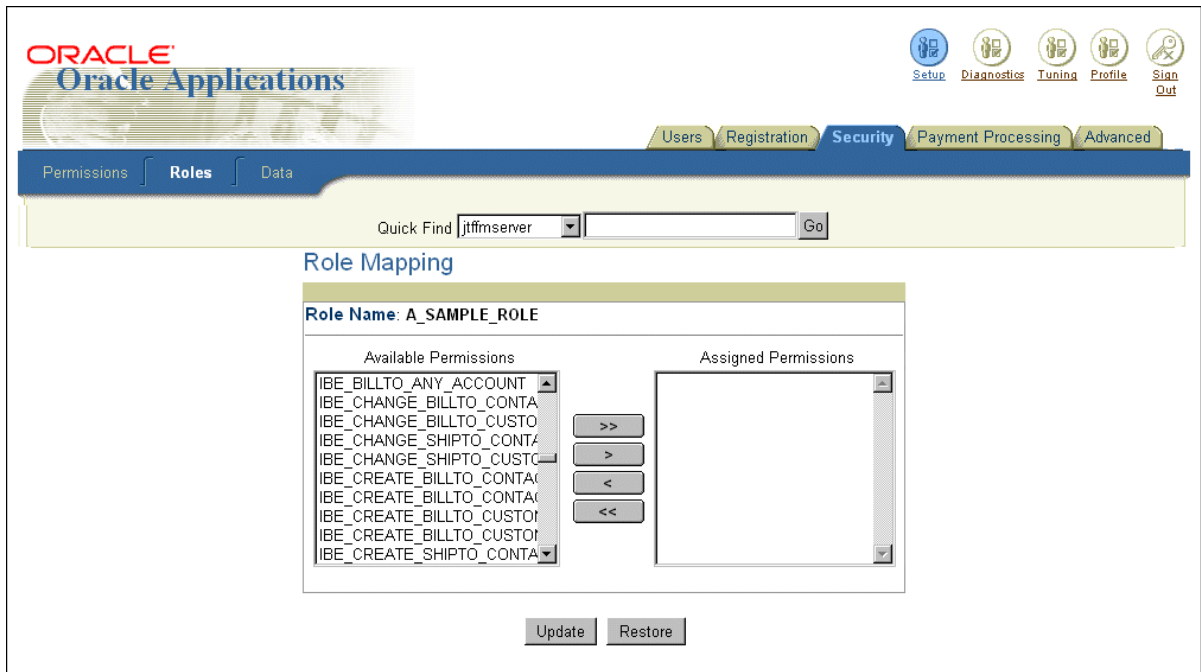
In the remaining text fields, enter names and descriptions for any other B2B user roles that you want to create.

Click **Update**.

The Roles screen appears again, with the role(s) that you have created.

5. Click the name of a role to specify its permissions.
6. The Role Mapping screen appears.

Figure 3–5 The Role Mapping Screen



7. To add permissions to the role, highlight the desired permissions in the Available Permissions list and click the ">" button to add them to the Assigned Permissions list.

To add all permissions to the role, click the ">>" button to add them to the Assigned Permissions list.

To remove permissions from the role, highlight the unwanted permissions in the Assigned Permissions list and click the "<" button to add them to the Available Permissions list.

To remove all permissions from the role, click the "<<" button to add them to the Available Permissions list.

Click **Update** to save the permission assignments.

You can now assign this role to any B2B users who register in your Web stores. If necessary, you can also assign this role or other customer roles to B2C users who register in your Web stores.

3.3.2 Approving B2B Users

When customers register with your Web stores as B2B users, you need to approve them before they can access B2B features and make purchases.

When you approve a B2B user for an organization that does not yet have an account, Oracle iStore 11i creates an account for the organization in the background.

If a customer directly requests a Web store user name for an organization account that already exists, instead of going through the organization's B2B administrative user(s), the Oracle iStore 11i system administrator needs to approve the user.

Use the following procedure to approve B2B users. You should check for new B2B user requests regularly.

Steps

1. Log in to the JTF login page at the following URL as SYSADMIN:

```
http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtflogin.jsp
```

2. Enter the Registration tab.

The Pending Requests list shows the B2B users created in your Web stores, with the most recently created users at the end.

3. In the Pending Requests list, click the Username of the Business User that you want to approve.

The Request Details screen appears.

Figure 3–6 The Request Details Screen

ORACLE
Oracle Applications

Setup Diagnostic Tuning Profile Sign Out Help

Users Registration Security Payment Processing Advanced

Approval Default Roles Default Responsibility

Quick Find jiffrserver Go

Request Details

User Details

First Name: B2B Area Code:

Last Name: User Phone Number:

Username: A_B2B_USER E-mail: b2buser@samplecorp.c

Registration Date: 20-MAR-2001

Update Restore Assign Accounts

Company Details

Name: Sample Corporation Address: 12345 Main St.

City: Anytown Country: US

State: CA Phone:

Registration Date: March 20, 2001 Fax:

Primary Contacts

Name	Username	Phone	E-mail
B2B User	A_B2B_USER	-	b2buser@samplecorp.com

Accept User Reject User Return to Summary

- Optional: In the Request Details screen, modify the information in the text fields as necessary.

Click **Update** to save these changes or **Restore** to revert to the last saved version of the data.

5. In the Request Details screen, click **Assign Accounts** to associate an account with the B2B customer.

The Associated Accounts screen appears with a list of the accounts available for this organization.

Select the checkbox in the Attach column next to any accounts that you want to associate with the B2B customer, and click **Update**.

The Request Details screen appears.

6. In the Request Details screen, do one of the following:
 - Click **Accept User** to approve the B2B customer application.
 - Click **Reject User** to reject the B2B customer application.
 - Click **Return to Summary** to view the Pending Requests list again.

Continue with this procedure only if you click **Accept User**.

7. Optional: Enter comments in the text field screen that appears when you click **Accept User** in the Request Details screen.

Click **Submit**.

The B2B customer is approved.

You should now set up the B2B customer's data using the procedure outlined in [Section 3.3.3, "Modifying B2B User Data"](#).

3.3.3 Modifying B2B User Data

Use this procedure to modify data for a B2B customer. If necessary, you can also use it to modify data for a B2C customer.

Steps

1. Log in to the JTF login page at the following URL as SYSADMIN:
`http://<host>:<apache port>/OA_HTML/jtfllogin.jsp`
2. In the Users tab, search for the customer that you want to modify as follows:
 - a. From the pull-down menu next to Find Users, select **User Name, Last Name**, or **First Name** as your search criterion.
 - b. Enter your search criterion in the adjacent text field. Use % as a wild-card character if necessary.

c. Click Go.

The Users screen reappears with the search results.

- 3. Optional:** In the Users screen, you can perform the following tasks in addition to the user data modifications outlined in the rest of this procedure:
 - To sort by Last Name, First Name, or User Name, click the corresponding heading link at the top of the list of users.
 - To delete a user, select the checkbox in the Select column and click **Delete Users**.
- 4.** In the Users screen, click the User Name for a customer to modify his or her user data.

The User Details screen appears.

Figure 3–7 The User Details Screen

ORACLE
Oracle Applications

Setup Diagnostics Tuning Profile Sign Out

Users Registration Security Payment Processing Advanced

Assign Roles

Quick Find

User Details

Party ID: 6464 User ID: A_B2B_USER

*Last Name *Email Address

*First Name

Business Details

Company Name: SAMPLE CORPORATION *Address

*City Address Line 2

*State Address Line 3

*Postal Code Country: AMERICA

*Phone *Fax

*Indicates required field.

Reset Password

New Password

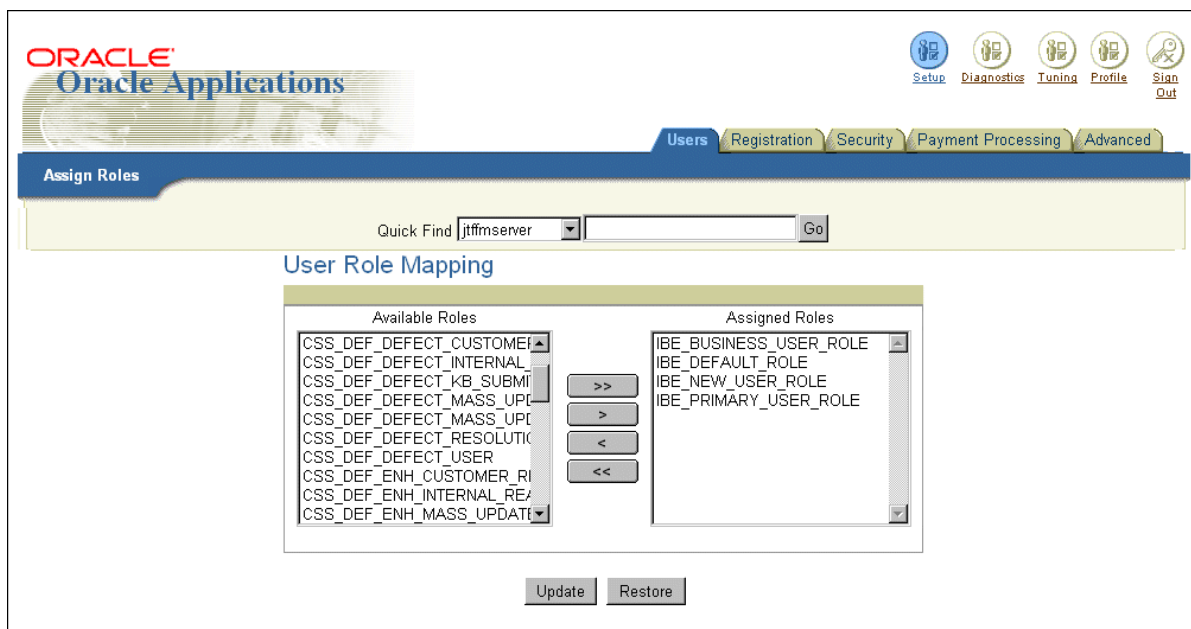
Password should be at least 6 characters long.

5. In the User Details screen, follow these steps to modify the customer name or address:
 - a. Enter the necessary changes in the Last Name, First Name, and Email Address text fields.
 - b. Click **Update** to save the changes.

If you make changes that you do not want to save, click **Restore** instead to revert to the last saved version of the user data.

When you click **Update**, the Acknowledgment screen appears with the newly saved data.

Figure 3–8 The User Role Mapping Screen



7. In the User Details screen, follow these steps to reset the customer's password:
 - a. Enter a new password in the New Password field.
 - b. Click **Reset Password**.
The Acknowledgment screen appears with a confirmation of the password change.
 - c. In the Acknowledgment screen, either click **Edit** to continue editing user data in the User Details screen, or click **User Roles** to modify user role assignments for the customer in the User Role Mapping screen.

3.4 Managing the Cache

Oracle iStore 11*i* caches your Web storefront product items and sections to improve performance of your Web site. However, if you make changes to a cached product item or section, the changes are not visible in the Customer UI unless the product item or section is purged from the cache.

Restarting the Apache server purges the entire cache, but you may not always want to do this, since it removes product items or sections you do not want to remove from the cache, and since the Web stores are unavailable while the server is restarting.

Oracle iStore 11*i* offers a cache management feature in the Merchant UI that enables you to purge only the product items or sections that you want to remove from the cache, while keeping the server—and thus the Web stores—up and running. You can purge the cache of the following sets of product items and sections:

- Specific product item(s)
- Specific section(s)
- All product items
- All sections
- The entire cache

Oracle iStore 11*i* uses multicast messages when it purges the cache to ensure that the cache on each Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is purged. The Oracle iStore 11*i* initialization code starts a thread within each JVM that listens for messages on a specific address and port. When you choose to purge the cache from the Merchant UI, Oracle iStore 11*i* sends a multicast message to that address and port. When a thread receives the message, it interprets the message and purges the appropriate cache. Since there is a thread on each JVM listening for messages, the cache will be purged in each JVM. The port number is set in the profile IBE: Port Number to use for multicast messages. See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for more information about this profile.

3.4.1 Purging the Entire Cache

Use this procedure to purge either the entire section cache or the entire product cache, or both.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.

2. Enter the Cache tab.

If necessary, click the Purge Entire Cache link.

The Purge Entire Cache screen appears.

3. Highlight the radio button next to the cache purging option you want to exercise:
 - Purge the entire Section Cache and entire Item Cache
 - Purge the entire Section Cache only
 - Purge the entire Item Cache only

4. Click **Update**.

The cache is purged.

3.4.2 Purging the Section Cache

Use this procedure to purge individual sections from your section cache.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.

2. Enter the Cache tab.

If necessary, click the Purge Section Cache link.

The Purge Section Cache screen appears.

3. Search for the section(s) you want to purge:
 - a. From the View pull-down menu, specify whether you will search by **Name**, **Section Code**, **Section Type**, or **Status**.
 - b. In the adjacent text field, enter your search criterion. Use % as a wild-card character if necessary.
 - c. Click **Go**.

The search results appear in the Purge Section Cache screen.

4. Select the checkbox in the Select column next to the section(s) you want to purge.
5. Click **Update**.

The cache is purged.

3.4.3 Purging the Product Cache

Use this procedure to purge individual product items from your product cache.

Steps

1. Launch the Merchant UI.
2. Enter the Cache tab.

If necessary, click the Purge Product Cache link.

The Purge Product Cache screen appears.

3. Search for the section(s) you want to purge:
 - a. From the View pull-down menu, specify whether you will search by **Name, Part Number, Category, or Status**.
 - b. In the adjacent text field, enter your search criterion. Use % as a wild-card character if necessary.
 - c. Click **Go**.

The search results appear in the Purge Product Cache screen.

4. Select the checkbox in the Select column next to the product(s) you want to purge.
5. Click **Update**.

The cache is purged.

Oracle iStore 11/ Template Mappings

The following table is a list of seeded template filenames, with programmatic access names and descriptions.

A.1 Oracle iStore 11/ Template Mappings

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_SCART_GET_SHAREE_P	ibescsr.jsp	Retrieve sharer shopping cart process page
STORE_SCART_SAVE	ibescsch.jsp	Save shopping cart
STORE_SCART_SAVE_P	ibescscr.jsp	Save shopping cart process page
STORE_SCART_SHARE_MERCHANT	ibescsmh.jsp	Share cart with merchant
STORE_SCART_SHARE_MERCHANT_P	ibescsmr.jsp	Share cart with merchant process page
STORE_SCART_SAVE_SHAREE	ibescssh.jsp	Save sharer shopping cart
STORE_SCART_SAVE_SHAREE_P	ibescsr.jsp	Save sharer shopping cart process page
STORE_REGISTER_USER	ibescuih.jsp	Register new user
STORE_SCART_VIEW	ibescvch.jsp	View shopping cart
STORE_SCART_VIEW_P	ibescvcr.jsp	View shopping cart process page
STORE_SCART_WARN1	ibescwha.jsp	Shopping cart warning page
STORE_SCART_WARN2	ibescwhb.jsp	Shopping cart warning page
STORE_SCART_BLURB	ibesciah.jsp	Shopping cart blurb

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_SCART_ADD_ONE_ITEM	ibescabh.jsp	Add Item to Cart Page for one item
STORE_SCART_ADD_ITEM	ibescalh.jsp	Add Item to Cart Page
STORE_SRCH_RESULT	ibesckr3.jsp	Show search results
STORE_SRCH_REFINE	ibesckrf.jsp	Refine search criteria
STORE_SHLIST_ERROR	ibeslwar.jsp	Show shopping list errors
STORE_SCART_DIRECT_ENTRY	ibescedh.jsp	Enter customer inventory items to cart - direct entry
STORE_SCART_DIRECT_ENTRY_P	ibescedp.jsp	Process direct entries
STORE_SHLIST_DISPLAY_LIST	ibesldlh.jsp	Display shopping lists
STORE_SHLIST_DISPLAY_LIST_P	ibesldhp.jsp	Process shopping lists
STORE_SHLIST_DISPLAY	ibesldld.jsp	Display shopping list
STORE_SHLIST_DISPLAY_P	ibesldlp.jsp	Process shopping list
STORE_SHLIST_ADD_ITEM	ibeslald.jsp	Add items to a list
STORE_SHLIST_ADD_ITEM_P	ibeslalp.jsp	Process addition of items to list
STORE_SHLIST_SAVE	ibeslcla.jsp	Save a shopping list
STORE_SHLIST_SAVE_P	ibeslclp.jsp	Process saving of shopping list
STORE_USR_CC_CREATE	ibeaccr.jsp	Create user credit card
STORE_USR_CC_DELETE	ibeaccdl.jsp	Delete user credit card
STORE_USR_CC_EDIT	ibeacced.jsp	Edit user credit card
STORE_USR_CC_EXPIRATION	ibeaccex.jsp	User credit card expiration
STORE_USR_CC_PRIMARY	ibeaccpr.jsp	User credit card primary
STORE_USR_CC_DISPLAY	ibeaccv1.jsp	User credit card display
STORE_USR_ACC_HOME	ibeahome.jsp	User account home
STORE_USR_ACC_LOGIN	ibealgn1.jsp	User account login
STORE_USR_ACC_LOGIN_AUTH	ibealgn2.jsp	User account authentication
STORE_USR_ACC_SELECT	ibealgn3.jsp	User account selection
STORE_USR_ACC_SELECTED	ibealgn4.jsp	User account selected
STORE_USR_PMTBK_DISPLAY	ibeapmtb.jsp	Displays user payment books

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_USR_PMTBK_SAVE	ibeapbsv.jsp	Save user payment books
STORE_USR_SIGNIN	ibeasgmn.jsp	Store user sign in
STORE_CONFIG_BRANCH	ibefbrch.jsp	Process a Configurator request
STORE_CONFIG_LAUNCH	ibefcnfg.jsp	Launch the Configurator
STORE_CONFIG_REDIRECT	ibefredr.jsp	Redirect request to the Configurator
STORE_CONFIG_FRAME_SRCS	ibeffrms.jsp	Provide frame specification to the Configurator
STORE_CONFIG_DISPLAY	ibefdisp.jsp	Include page to display a configured item
STORE_ORDER_XPR_SETTINGS_DISPLAY	ibeo1set.jsp	Display Express Checkout settings
STORE_ORDER_XPR_SETTINGS_SAVE	ibeo1sav.jsp	Save Express Checkout settings
STORE_ORDER_XPR_TAG_AREA	ibeo1tag.jsp	Display the area around the checkout tag
STORE_ORDER_XPR_PROCESS	ibeo1dob.jsp	Process the Express Checkout request
STORE_ORDER_XPR_VIEW	ibeo1vew.jsp	View an Express Checkout order
STORE_ORDER_XPR_CANCEL	ibeo1ccl.jsp	Cancel an Express Checkout order
STORE_ORDER_XPR_ERROR	ibeo1err.jsp	Error during Express Checkout
STORE_ORDER_PAYMENT_OPTS_INCLUDE	ibeopmto.jsp	Include page for displaying payment options
STORE_PSI_ORDER_DETAIL	ibeiodtl.jsp	Show order detail
STORE_PSI_ORDER_SUMMARY	ibeiohdr.jsp	Order search results page
STORE_PSI_SHIPMENT_DETAIL	ibeiship.jsp	Shipment details
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_SUMMARY	ibeiinvh.jsp	Invoice summary
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_DETAIL	ibeiinvd.jsp	Invoice details
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_SUMMARY	ibeipmth.jsp	Payment summary
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_DETAIL	ibeipmtd.jsp	Payment summary
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_PAYMENT_DETAIL	ibeiiivpd.jsp	Invoice payment details

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_PSI_SIDE_NAVBAR	ibeiside.jsp	Post sales navigation bar
STORE_PSI_ATP_HEADER	ibeiatph.jsp	Display ATP headers
STORE_PSI_ATP_REDIRECT	ibeiatpr.jsp	ATP Redirect page
STORE_SCART_LIST1	ibesccar.jsp	Convert Cart to List 1
STORE_SCART_LIST1_P	ibesccbr.jsp	Convert Cart to List 1 Process Page
STORE_SCART_LIST2	ibesccla.jsp	Convert Cart to List 2
STORE_SCART_LIST2_P	ibescclb.jsp	Convert cart to list 2 process page
STORE_SCART_MODIFY	ibescdch.jsp	Modify shopping cart
STORE_SCART_MODIFY_P	ibescdcr.jsp	Modify shopping cart process page
STORE_SCART_VIEW_LIST	ibescdlh.jsp	View shopping cart lists
STORE_SCART_VIEW_LIST_P	ibescdlr.jsp	View shopping cart lists process page
STORE_SCART_VIEW_DISCOUNT	ibescpch.jsp	View shopping cart discount
STORE_SCART_GET_SHAREE	ibescrsh.jsp	Retrieve sharer shopping cart
STORE_USR_ACC_LOGOUT	ibealgot.jsp	User account logout
STORE_USR_ACC_SUBMENU	ibeamenu.jsp	User account submenu
STORE_USR_CREATE	ibebcrus.jsp	User creation
STORE_USR_EDIT	ibebmous.jsp	User edit
STORE_USR_ACC_CREATE	ibebcrac.jsp	User account creation
STORE_USR_ACC_EDIT	ibeemoac.jsp	User account edit
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ROLE	ibebrole.jsp	Role Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_PERM	ibeperm.jsp	Permission Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_USER	ibeuser.jsp	User Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ACC	ibeusac.jsp	User Account Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ADD_ACC	ibebadac.jsp	Add User Account
STORE_USR_ACC_PASSWORD	ibeapwd.jsp	User Password
STORE_USR_ACC_WELCOME	ibeawlcm.jsp	User welcome bin
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ROLE_W	ibebwrol.jsp	Role Management

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_USR_ADMIN_PERM_W	ibebwprm.jsp	Permission Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_USER_W	ibebwusr.jsp	User Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ACC_W	ibebwusa.jsp	User Account Management
STORE_USR_ADMIN_ADD_ACC_W	ibebwada.jsp	Add User Account
STORE_CTLG_BUY_ROUTE	ibecbrte.jsp	Catalog - Buy Routing
STORE_CTLG_BROWSE	ibecbrws.jsp	Catalog - Hierarchy Browse
STORE_CTLG_DISPLAY_ROUTE	ibecdrtte.jsp	Catalog Display Routing
STORE_CTLG_DISPLAY_ROUTE_INCLUDED	ibecdrti.jsp	Catalog - Display routing page included within another page
STORE_CTLG_ITEM_RELATION	ibecirel.jsp	Catalog - Item Relationship
STORE_CTLG_ITEM_ROUTE	ibecirte.jsp	Catalog - Item Routing
STORE_CTLG_PATH	ibecpath.jsp	Catalog - Path
STORE_CTLG_FEATURED_SECTION	ibecfsct.jsp	Catalog - Featured section
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SECTION_MULTIPLE	ibeclfsm.jsp	Catalog - Leaf section allowing to add multiple products to the shopping cart
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SECTION_SINGLE	ibeclfss.jsp	Catalog - Leaf section allowing addition of single product to the shopping cart
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_DOWN_LEAF	ibecddlf.jsp	Catalog - Drill down to the leaf sections
STORE_CTLG_FEATURED_SECTION_INCLUDED	ibecfsti.jsp	Catalog - Featured section included within another page
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SECT_MULTIPLE_INCLUDED	ibecfsmi.jsp	Catalog - Leaf section allowing addition of multiple products to the shopping cart included in another page
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SECT_SINGLE_INCLUDED	ibecfssi.jsp	Catalog - Leaf section allowing addition of single product to the shopping cart included in another page
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_DOWN_LEAF_INCLUDED	ibecdldfi.jsp	Catalog - Drill down to the leaf sections included in another page

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CTLG_FEATURED_ITEM	ibecfitm.jsp	Catalog - Featured product
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_ITEM	ibeclitm.jsp	Catalog - Leaf product allowing addition of single product to the shopping cart
STORE_CTLG_ITEM_DETAIL	ibecitmd.jsp	Catalog - Product detail
STORE_ADDR_BOOK	ibeaadbk.jsp	Show address book entries
STORE_ADDR_CREATE	ibeaadcr.jsp	Create address book entry
STORE_ADDR_DELETE	ibeaadl.jsp	Delete an address book entry
STORE_ADDR_EDIT	ibeaaed.jsp	Edit an address book entry
STORE_ADDR_PRIMARY	ibeaadpr.jsp	Display the primary address of the customer
STORE_ADDR_DISPLAY	ibeaadv1.jsp	Display the address book
STORE_ADDR_DISPLAY_ALT	ibeaadv2.jsp	Display the address book
STORE_ADDR_SELECT	ibeaaads1.jsp	Select a particular address
STORE_ORDER_SHIP_HEADER	ibeoshdr.jsp	Display the ship header
STORE_ORDER_INVOICE_HEADER	ibeobhdr.jsp	Display invoice header
STORE_ORDER_CONFIRM	ibeocnfm.jsp	Confirm an order
STORE_ORDER_SHIP_LINE	ibeoslne.jsp	Display order ship line
STORE_ORDER_EDIT	ibeoedit.jsp	Edit an order
STORE_ORDER_EDIT_P	ibeoedtd.jsp	Edit an order process page
STORE_ORDER_SHIP_LINE_P	ibeoslnd.jsp	Process a ship line
STORE_ORDER_SHIP_HEADER_P	ibeoshdd.jsp	Process a ship header
STORE_ORDER_INVOICE_HEADER_P	ibeobhdd.jsp	Process an invoice header
STORE_ORDER_SUMMARY	ibeosumm.jsp	Display order summary
STORE_ORDER_CONFIRM_P	ibeocnfd.jsp	Process an order confirmation
STORE_PSI_ATP_C	ibeCOtcAtp.jsp	ATP Component page for Customer and Sales Rep
STORE_PSI_ATP_D	ibeCOtdAtp.jsp	ATP Display Page
STORE_PSI_ATP_P	ibeCOtpAtp.jsp	ATP Processing Page

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_PSI_ATP_SP_D	ibeSOtdAtp.jsp	ATP Container page for Sales Rep
STORE_CUST_ACC_LOGIN_AUTH	ibeCAcpLogin.jsp	Account Authorization
STORE_CUST_ACC_SELECT	ibeCAcdChooseAcct.jsp	Account Select Display
STORE_CUST_ACC_SELECTED	ibeCAcpChooseAcct.jsp	Account Select Processing
STORE_USR_MGMT_ADD_ACC_W	ibeCUmpAddAcctWrap.jsp	Add User Account
STORE_SEARCH_REFINE	ibeCSrdSrchAdvForm.jsp	Advanced Search Form
STORE_CFG_BRANCH	ibeCFgpBranch.jsp	Main logic page to route the return to iStore from Configurator
STORE_CUST_BUSINESS_REGISTRATION	ibeCAcdBizUserReg.jsp	Business User registration display
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_INCL	ibeCCtdFSubSctI.jsp	Catalog Featured Subsections Included
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_MULT_2COL	ibeCCtpFSuStMs2.jsp	Process page for non-leaf section featured products with multiple select two columns
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_MULT_2COL_INCL	ibeCCtdFSuStMs2I.jsp	Non-leaf section featured products with multiple select two columns
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_MULT_3COL	ibeCCtpFSuStMs3.jsp	Process page for non-leaf section featured products with multiple select three columns
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_MULT_3COL_INCL	ibeCCtdFSuStMs3I.jsp	Non-leaf section featured products with multiple select three columns
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_ITEM_INCL	ibeCCtdLeafItem.jsp	Display leaf item within section page
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_SINGLE	ibeCCtpLeafSctSs.jsp	Process page for displaying leaf section with single select
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_SINGLE_INCL	ibeCCtdLeafSctSsI.jsp	Display leaf section with single select
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_ITEMS	ibeCCtpLfStlts.jsp	Process page for displaying items of the current leaf section
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_ITEMS_INCL	ibeCCtdLfStltsI.jsp	Displaying items of the current leaf section
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BROWSE	ibeCCtdSctBrwsBin.jsp	Display catalog hierarchy for browsing

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CTLG_SUBSCT_DPDN_ITEMS	ibeCCtpChStDdIts.jsp	Process page for sub leaf sections with items in drop down list
STORE_CTLG_SUBSCT_DPDN_ITEMS_INCL	ibeCCtdChStDdItsI.jsp	Display sub leaf sections with items in drop down list
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_FWD	ibeCCtpFwdSubSct.jsp	Display featured sub sections or forward to first navigational child
STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH	ibeCCtdSctPath.jsp	Display path traversed in hierarchy
STORE_CTLG_SCT_DTL_DPDN_ITEMS	ibeCCtpStMmDtlts.jsp	Process page for displaying section detail with items in a drop-down list
STORE_CTLG_SCT_DTL_DPDN_ITEMS_INCL	ibeCCtdStMmDtltsI.jsp	Displaying section detail with items in a drop down list
STORE_CTLG_BULLET_SCT	ibeCCtdBlts.jsp	List of sections in two columns with bullets
STORE_CTLG_BUY_PROCESS_ROUTE	ibeCCtpBuyRoute.jsp	Routing page for add to cart Express Checkout etc.
STORE_CTLG_DLDN_SCT_BULLET	ibeCCtpDdLfStBl.jsp	Process page for non-leaf section drill down and show bulleted sub sections
STORE_CTLG_DLDN_SCT_BULLET_INCL	ibeCCtdDdLfStBlI.jsp	Non-leaf section drill down and show bulleted sub sections
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_LEAF	ibeCCtpDrillLeaf.jsp	Processing page for drilling down to leaf subsections
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_LEAF_INCL	ibeCCtdDrillLeafI.jsp	Display section by drilling down to leaf subsections and displaying items
STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE	ibeCCtpItmDspRte.jsp	Item display routing
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_MULTIPLE	ibeCCtpLfStMsL.jsp	Process page for leaf section multiple select with product links
STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_MULT_INCL	ibeCCtdLfStMsLI.jsp	Leaf section center page multiple select with product links
STORE_CTLG_LF_SCT_MULT_NOLINKS	ibeCCtpLfStMs.jsp	Process page for leaf section multiple select with no product links
STORE_CTLG_LF_SCT_MULT_NOLINKS_INCL	ibeCCtdLfStMsI.jsp	Leaf section center page multiple select with no product links
STORE_CTLG_ITEM_DETAILS	ibeCCtdItemDetail.jsp	Display item detail

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON	ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp	Common display page with bins center page menu etc.
STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE	ibeCCtpSctDspRte.jsp	Display routing page
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT	ibeCCtpStBlSuSt.jsp	Process page for non-leaf section bulleted subsections
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT_INCL	ibeCCtdStBlSuStI.jsp	Non-leaf section - bulleted subsections
STORE_CTLG_ITEM_INFO	ibeCCtdItemInfo.jsp	Catalogue Item Information
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_CHANGE_SENT	ibeCCkdCntrctSent.jsp	Change Contract
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_CHANGE	ibeCCkdCntrctChng.jsp	Contract Change
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_CHANGE_P	ibeCCkpCntrctChng.jsp	Contract Change
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT	ibeCCkdCntrct.jsp	Contract Checkout
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_P	ibeCCkpCntrct.jsp	Contract Process
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_TEXT	ibeCCkdCntrctText.jsp	Contract Text
STORE_CFG_DISPLAY	ibeCFgdDisplay.jsp	Display a Configured item in an HTML table cell
STORE_XPR_CANCEL	ibeCXpdShowCancel.jsp	Cancel a Express Checkout order
STORE_XPR_ERROR	ibeCXpdShowError.jsp	Error during Express Checkout
STORE_XPR_PROCESS	ibeCXppDoButton.jsp	Processes the Express Checkout request
STORE_XPR_SETTINGS_DISPLAY	ibeCXpdShowSettings.jsp	Displays Express Checkout settings
STORE_XPR_SETTINGS_SAVE	ibeCXppSaveSettings.jsp	Save Express Checkout settings
STORE_XPR_TAG_AREA	ibeCXpdShowTag.jsp	Displays the area around the checkout tag
STORE_XPR_VIEW	ibeCXpdViewPending.jsp	View a Express Checkout order
STORE_CUST_SIGNIN	ibeCAcdEndUserReg.jsp	End User registration display
STORE_CART_ENTER_PROMO	ibeCScdEnterPromo.jsp	Enter Promotion Code
STORE_CART_ENTER_PROMO_P	ibeCScpEnterPromo.jsp	Enter Promotion Code

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CHKOUT_HEADER_DISPLAY	ibeCCkdHdrDisplay.jsp	Header Display
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_DETAIL_D	ibeCOtdInvDtl.jsp	Invoice details
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_PAYMENT_DETAIL_D	ibeCOtdInvPmtDtl.jsp	Invoice payment details
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_DETAIL_P	ibeCOtdInvDtlMain.jsp	Invoice Details Processing Page
STORE_CHKOUT_INVOICE_HEADER	ibeCCkdHdrBillPay.jsp	Invoice Header Display
STORE_CHKOUT_INVOICE_HEADER_P	ibeCCkpHdrBillPay.jsp	Invoice Header Process
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_SUMMARY_D	ibeCOtdInvSum.jsp	Invoice Summary Display Page
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_SUMMARY_P	ibeCOtdInvSumMain.jsp	Invoice Summary Processing Page
STORE_PSI_INVOICE_PAYMENT_DETAIL_P	ibeCOtdInvPmtMain.jsp	Invoice to Payment Details Processing Page
JTF_STYLE_SHEET	jtfcuss.css	JTF Style Sheet
STORE_CUST_ACC_LOGIN	ibeCAcdLogin.jsp	Login
STORE_CUST_ACC_LOGOUT	ibeCAcpLogout.jsp	Logout
STORE_CART_LINE_SPLIT_DETAILS	ibeCCkdLineSplit.jsp	Modify line level shipping details display page
STORE_CART_LINE_SPLIT_DETAILS_P	ibeCCkpLineSplit.jsp	Modify line level shipping details process page
STORE_CUST_ACC_SUBMENU	ibeCAcdMenu.jsp	My Account menu
STORE_PSI_ORDER_DETAIL_D	ibeCOtdOrdDtl.jsp	Order Detail Display Page
STORE_PSI_ORDER_DETAIL_P	ibeCOtdOrdDtlMain.jsp	Order Detail Processing Page
STORE_CHKOUT_REVIEW	ibeCCkdOrdReview.jsp	Order Review
STORE_CHKOUT_REVIEW_P	ibeCCkpOrdReview.jsp	Order Review Process
STORE_CHKOUT_SUMMARY	ibeCCkdOrdSummary.jsp	Order Summary
STORE_PSI_ORDER_SUMMARY_D	ibeCOtdOrdSum.jsp	Order Summary Display Page
STORE_PSI_ORDER_SUMMARY_P	ibeCOtdOrdSumMain.jsp	Order Summary Processing Page
STORE_CUST_ACC_PREFS	ibeCAcdPreferences.jsp	Order preferences
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_DETAIL_D	ibeCOtdPmtDtl.jsp	Payment summary
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_SUMMARY_D	ibeCOtdPmtSum.jsp	Payment summary

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CUST_ACC_PASSWORD	ibeCAcdPassword.jsp	Password Change
STORE_CUST_PMTBK_DISPLAY	ibeCPmdPmtBook.jsp	Payment Book processing
STORE_CUST_PMTBK_SAVE	ibeCPmpPmtBook.jsp	Payment Book processing
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_DETAIL_P	ibeCOtdPmtDtlMain.jsp	Payment Details Processing Page
STORE_CUST_PMTBK_PAYMENT_OPTIONS	ibeCPmdPmtOptions.jsp	Payment Options Display
STORE_PSI_PAYMENT_SUMMARY_P	ibeCOtdPmtSumMain.jsp	Payment Summary Processing Page
STORE_USR_MGMT_PERM_W	ibeCUmpPermWrap.jsp	Permission Management
STORE_CUST_ACC_HOME	ibeCAcdPersonalInfo.jsp	Personal Information
STORE_CUST_REGISTRATION	ibeCAcpRegistration.jsp	Registration processing
STORE_CFG_REDIRECT	ibeCFgpRedirect.jsp	Initial page for Configurator servlet to post to in returning to iStore and regaining iStore context.
STORE_USR_MGMT_ROLE_W	ibeCUmpRoleWrap.jsp	Role Management
STORE_SEARCH_RESULT	ibeCSrdSrchResults.jsp	Shows search results
STORE_CART_DIRECT_ENTRY	ibeCScdDirectEntry.jsp	Enter customers inv items to cart - direct entry
STORE_CART_DIRECT_ENTRY_P	ibeCScpDirectEntry.jsp	Processes direct entries
STORE_SLIST_ADD_ITEM	ibeCSldAddItems.jsp	Add items to a list
STORE_SLIST_ADD_ITEM_P	ibeCSlpAddItems.jsp	Processes addition of items to list
STORE_SLIST_DISPLAY	ibeCSldListDetail.jsp	Display shopping list
STORE_SLIST_DISPLAY_P	ibeCSlpListDetail.jsp	Processes shopping list
STORE_SLIST_DISPLAY_LIST_P	ibeCSlpLists.jsp	Processes shopping lists
STORE_SLIST_SAVE	ibeCSldSave.jsp	Save a shopping list
STORE_SLIST_SAVE_ACTIVE_CART	ibeCSldSaveActive.jsp	Saving of shopping list to a active cart
STORE_SLIST_SAVE_ACTIVE_CART_P	ibeCSlpSaveActive.jsp	Process saving of shopping list to a active cart
STORE_SLIST_SAVE_P	ibeCSlpSave.jsp	Process saving of shopping list
STORE_SLIST_DISPLAY_LIST	ibeCSldLists.jsp	Displays shopping lists

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_CART_ADD_ITEM	ibeCScpAddItem.jsp	Add Item to Cart Page
STORE_CART_GET_SHAREE	ibeCScdSharee.jsp	Retrieve sharee shopping cart
STORE_CART_VIEW_LIST	ibeCScdListS.jsp	View shopping cart lists
STORE_CART_VIEW_LIST_P	ibeCScpListS.jsp	View shopping cart lists process page
STORE_CART_MODIFY	ibeCScdViewA.jsp	Modify shopping cart
STORE_CART_MODIFY_P	ibeCScpViewA.jsp	Modify shopping cart process page
STORE_CART_SAVE	ibeCScdSave.jsp	Save shopping cart
STORE_CART_SAVE_P	ibeCScpSave.jsp	Save shopping cart process page
STORE_CART_VIEW	ibeCScdViewS.jsp	View shopping cart
STORE_CART_VIEW_P	ibeCScpViewS.jsp	View shopping cart process page
STORE_CHKOUT_SALES_HELP_P	ibeCCkpSalesHelp.jsp	Sale Help Process
STORE_CHKOUT_SALES_HELP	ibeCCkdSalesHelp.jsp	Sales Help
STORE_CART_SAVE_CONFIRM	ibeCScdConfirm.jsp	Save Cart Process
STORE_CART_SAVE_CONFIRM_P	ibeCScpConfirm.jsp	Save and Confirm
STORE_CFG_FRAME_SRCS	ibeCFgdFrameSources.jsp	Establishes the outer frame set for Configurator DHTML UI to run in.
STORE_CHKOUT_SHIP_HEADER	ibeCCkdHdrShip.jsp	Ship Header Display
STORE_CHKOUT_SHIP_HEADER_P	ibeCCkpHdrShip.jsp	Ship Header Process
STORE_PSI_SHIPMENT_DETAIL_D	ibeCOtdShpDtl.jsp	Shipment Details Display Page
STORE_PSI_SHIPMENT_DETAIL_P	ibeCOtdShpDtlMain.jsp	Shipment Details Processing Page
STORE_CHKOUT_SHIPMENT_METHODS	ibeCCkdShipMthds.jsp	Shipment Methods
STORE_CART_WARN	ibeCScdWarn.jsp	Shopping Cart Warning Display
STORE_CART_WARN_P	ibeCScpWarn.jsp	Shopping Cart Warning Process
STORE_CHKOUT_CONTRACT_STD	stdContract.jsp	Standard Contract
STORE_CFG_LAUNCH	ibeCFgpLaunch.jsp	Prepares parameters to launch the Configurator from iStore.
STORE_ADDRBK_BOOK	ibeCAddAddrBook.jsp	Store Address Book

Table A-1 Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings (Cont.)

Access Name	JSP Page	Description
STORE_ADDRBK_CREATE	ibeCAdpAddrEdit.jsp	Store Address Create
STORE_ADDRBK_DELETE	ibeCAdpAddrDelete.jsp	Store Address Delete
STORE_ADDRBK_DISPLAY	ibeCAddAddrDsp1.jsp	Store Address Display
STORE_ADDRBK_DISPLAY_ALT	ibeCAddAddrDsp2.jsp	Store Address Display Alternate
STORE_ADDRBK_DISPLAY_ALT2	ibeCAddAddrDsp3.jsp	Store Address Display Alternate 2
STORE_ADDRBK_DISPLAY_FORM	ibeCAddAddrEdit0.jsp	Store Address Display Form
STORE_ADDRBK_EDIT	ibeCAddAddrEdit.jsp	Store Address Edit
STORE_CART_SEL_SUPP	ibeCScdSupportLvl.jsp	Support Levels
STORE_USR_MGMT_ACC_W	ibeCUmpAcctWrap.jsp	User Account Management
STORE_USR_MGMT_USER_W	ibeCUmpUserWrap.jsp	User Management
STORE_CUST_PROFILE	ibeCAcpProfile.jsp	User profile
STORE_CART_VIEW_PROMO	ibeCScdViewPromo.jsp	View Promotion Code
STORE_CART_VIEW_PROMO_P	ibeCScpViewPromo.jsp	View Promotion Code
STORE_CART_VIEW_LINE	ibeCScdViewLine.jsp	View Shopping Cart Line
STORE_CART_VIEW_SUM	ibeCScdViewSum.jsp	View Shopping Cart Sum
STORE_PSI_W_ORD_SRCH_D	ibeCOtdWOrdSrch.jsp	Walkin Order Search Display Page
STORE_PSI_W_ORD_SRCH_P	ibeCOtpWOrdSrch.jsp	Walkin Order Search Processing Page
STORE_CUST_ACC_WELCOME	ibeCAcdWelcome.jsp	Welcome
STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT	ibeCCtpFSubSct.jsp	Process page for displaying featured subsections

Standards for Customizing JavaServer Pages

This appendix lists the standards you should follow when customizing JavaServer Pages for the Oracle iStore 11*i* Web storefront.

B.1 JSP Standards (Customer Facing)

Oracle coding standards for Oracle iStore 11*i* Web store JSPs are listed below.

Note: Never modify an original JSP. Make a copy of the original JSP and modify only the copy. If a bug occurs, compare the JSP copy to the JSP original.

Standard Includes for Requested and Forwarded JSPs

These are standard includes for requested and forwarded JSPs, not included JSPs.

Top of JSP Page

```
<% int pc = PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE; %>
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_guestNotAllowed", "true", pc); //WA %>
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_B2CNotAllowed", "true", pc); //WA %>
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_permission", "<permission>", pc); //WA %>
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_sensitivePage", "true", pc); //WA %>
<%@include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>
```

WA: Wherever Applicable

Title or Menu

(not required in "processing only" JSPs)

```
<% MessageManagerInter mm = Architecture.getMessageManagerInstance();
    pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle", mm.getMessage("prompt"), pc); %>
<%@include file="ibeCZzdTop.jsp" %>
<!-- say this jsp is for address book. highlight proper tabs/menus -->
<% pageContext.setAttribute("selectedTab", "account", pc);
    pageContext.setAttribute("selectedMenu", "userInfo", pc);
    pageContext.setAttribute("selectedSide", "addrbook", pc); %>
<%@include file="ibeCZzdMenu.jsp" %>
<!-- display rest of the page body below this -->
```

Bottom of JSP Page

(required wherever execution ends)

```
<%@include file="ibeCZzdBottom.jsp" %>
```

Hyperlinks, JSP Include and Forward, and Forms

In the examples below, a template name (for example, STORE_USR_ACC_LOGOUT) is mapped to a raw JSP file name (for example, ibeCAcpLogout.jsp) by the template manager, which is implemented in the DisplayManager class.

Top of JSP Include Page

```
<!-- $Header: standards.html 115.3 2000/06/22 19:04:06 jnath noship $ -->
```

Bottom of JSP Include Page

```
<!-- ibexyyyy.jsp end -->
```

Hyperlink

To display a hyperlink, call the appropriate `getURL` method to get the URL. This ensures that the cookie is appended to the hyperlink, in case the browser is not accepting cookies.

```
DisplayManager.getURL(<template name>)
DisplayManager.getURL(<template name>, <query string>)
RequestCtx.getURL(<jsp filename>)
RequestCtx.getURL(<jsp filename>, <query string>)
```

For example,

```
<% String url = DisplayManager.getURL("STORE_USR_ACC_LOGOUT"); %>
<a href=<%=url%>>Click here to logout</a>
```

File Name (for JSP Include, JSP Forward, and Form Actions)

For JSP include, JSP forward and form actions, the raw JSP file name is required instead of the URL. Call `DisplayManager.getTemplate` to get the JSP file name from the template name.

For example,

```
<% String jspfilename = DisplayManager.getTemplate(
    "STORE_SOME_TEMPLATE").getFileName() %>
<jsp:include page="<%=jspfilename%" flush="true"/> OR
<jsp:forward page="<%=jspfilename%" />
```

Forms

In a form, apart from getting the JSP file name from the template name to be used as the action, also call `RequestCtx.getSessionInfoAsHiddenParam()` within the form. This ensures that the cookie is passed as a hidden field, in case the browser is not accepting cookies.

For example,

```
<form method=post action=<%=jspfilename%>>
  ...
  <%= RequestCtx.getSessionInfoAsHiddenParam() %>
</form>
```

B.1.1 Transactions and Database Connections

This section displays the JSP and Java API code for transactional APIs and read-only APIs.

Transactional APIs: JSP Code

```
Object txnLock = new Object();
try {
    TransactionScope.begin(txnLock);
    Call transactional and other APIs
}
catch (CustomerException e) { // exceptions that can be handled
    TransactionScope.setRollbackOnly();
    errorFlag = true;
}
catch (Exception e1) { // other unexpected exceptions
    TransactionScope.setRollbackOnly();
    throw e1;
}
```

```
finally {
    TransactionScope.end(txnLock);
}
if (errorFlag == true) {
    handle error: display message or jsp:forward or sendRedirect
    if sendRedirect, call RequestCtx.end() first
}
```

Transactional APIs: Java API Code

```
public static void transactionalApi()
    throws FrameworkException, CustomerException, SQLException
{
    OracleConnection conn = (OracleConnection) TransactionScope.getConnection();
    Statement          stmt = ... ;
    ...
    try {
        stmt.execute();
        ...
    }
    finally {
        if (stmt != null) stmt.close();
    }
}
```

Read-Only APIs: JSP Code

```
try {
    readonlyApi();
    readonlyApi();
}
catch (CustomerException e) { // catch exceptions that can be handled
    // handle exception
}
```

Read-Only APIs: Java API Code

```
public static void readonlyApi()
    throws FrameworkException, SQLException
{
    OracleConnection conn = (OracleConnection) TransactionScope.getConnection();
    Statement          stmt = ... ;
    ...
    try {
        stmt.execute();
        ...
    }
}
```

```
    }  
    finally {  
        if (stmt != null) stmt.close();  
        TransactionScope.releaseConnection(conn);  
    }  
}
```

B.1.2 Exception Handling

User Errors

Raise a subclass of `FrameworkException` in the API and handle it in the calling JSP.

Fatal Errors

Raise `FrameworkException` or let the original exception (for example, `SQLException`) propagate to `ibeCZzdError.jsp`.

B.1.3 API Standards

Package Naming

Customer Side

```
oracle.apps.ibe.<sub-component>
```

or

```
oracle.apps.ibe.<sub-component>.<sub-sub-component>
```

Merchant Side

```
oracle.apps.ibe.setup.<sub-component>
```

Load Method(s)

Each class will have at least one static load method. Given a `recordId`, it gets the record from the database or cache. The API returns the record object. The method either caches the record object (for certain classes) or performs deep load or shallow load (for certain classes).

For example,

```
Product prd = Product.load(productid, "DEEP");  
Account acc = Account.load(accountid);
```

Accessing Member Variables

Once a record object is loaded, the member variables can be accessed directly, for example, `acc.accountId`.

They can also be accessed using get methods, for example, `prd.getProductId()`.

Get Methods

Get methods are not mandatory, except for translatable attributes. It will return the value in the appropriate language, for example, `prd.getDescription()`.

Standard Parameters

Standard parameters, such as `userid` and `lang code`, will be available statically from `RequestCtx`, for example, `RequestCtx.getUserId()`.

B.2 Passing Values Across Templates

Use the following guidelines for passing values across templates.

pageContext.setAttribute

```
pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle",
    "iStore Framework",
    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
```

pageContext.getAttribute

```
pageContext.getAttribute("_pageTitle",
    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
```

Example Parameters

```
<%@ include file="jtfincl.jsp" %>

<% int pc = PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE; %>
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_guestNotAllowed", "true", pc); // #1
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_B2CNotAllowed", "true", pc); // #2
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_permission", "<permission>", pc); // #3
<% pageContext.setAttribute("_sensitivePage", "true", pc); // #4
<%@ include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>

<% pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle", "iStore Framework", pc); %>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdTop.jsp" %>
```

```

pageContext.setAttribute("selectedTab", "0", pc);// #5
pageContext.setAttribute("selectedMenu", "0", pc);// #6
pageContext.setAttribute("selectedSide", "0", pc);// #7
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdMenu.jsp"%>

Hello World
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdBottom.jsp" %>

```

See the following table for notes about this code example.

Table B-1 Example Notes

Note	Description
# 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ensures that only logged in users can access the page and see the "Hello World" message. Anonymous users are asked to sign in or register.
# 2	Ensures that only registered business customers can access the page.
# 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To check permissions, for example, if foo.jsp is used to create an address, then <permission> is CREATE_ADDRESS. Oracle iStore 11i ships with predefined permissions that you can use to restrict the access of B2B users to a page. For B2C users, Oracle iStore 11i does not check permissions, and instead checks the _B2CNotAllowed flag.
# 4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Controls access to sensitive pages, for example, users' personal information such as email address, credit card number, and so on. The product catalog and view shopping cart pages are non-sensitive pages. When users go from a non-sensitive page to a sensitive page, they are re-authenticated. Sensitive pages should be SSL enabled. In general, all _guestNotAllowed pages are sensitive pages.
# 5, # 6, # 7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specifies which tab, subtab, and side menu to highlight, starting from 0. For example, see ibeCZzdMenu.jsp.

B.3 Passing Parameters/Cookies

To pass parameters/cookies, use the following guidelines.

See [Example Parameters](#) and replace “Hello World” with the following line:

```
<ahref=<%=DisplayManager.getURL("STORE_HOME")%>>Go to iStore Home</a>
```

Display Manager then calls `RequestCtx.getURL(<jspFileName>)` to append the cookie string to the JSP file name if necessary.

To pass more parameters, use

```
DisplayManager.getURL (<accessName>, <query string>) or  
RequestCtx.getURL (<jspFileName>, <query string>).
```

Where the query string is of the form: “foo 1=bar1&foo2=bar2&foo3=bar3”.

In a form, the cookie string is passed as a hidden field, for example,

```
RequestCtx.getSessionInfoAsHiddenParam()
```

To access a physical file without a cookie, use

```
DisplayManager.getTemplate (<access name>) .getFileName()
```

B.4 Customizing Oracle iStore 11/ Using APIs

To make changes to the UI or page displays, you must have complete knowledge of the APIs being called from the JSP. These APIs are the key for displaying data on the store pages. These are the application objects/beans. Customers and users cannot modify these class files.

See *Oracle iStore Implementation Guide* for API documentation.

B.5 Modifying the Customer User Interface

The Oracle iStore 11i Customer UI page is sectioned into various information containers, referred to as *bins* or place holders. These bins hold the content-specific information and display it logically on the page. To change the look and feel of the UI, you can modify the text in the bin and the layout of the bins.

Note: Never change an original JSP. To modify a JSP, make a copy of the original JSP and modify only the copy. If a bug occurs, compare the JSP copy to the JSP original.

See [Appendix C](#) for a discussion of Customer UI catalog template flows and customization guidelines.

B.5.1 Changing the Text in Bins

The text in the bins (for example, Welcome Message Bin, Shopping Cart Bin, Section Tree Bin) comes from the Messages stored in Oracle Forms. To change the text in the bins:

1. Log in to Oracle Forms with the Application Developer responsibility.
2. Choose the Messages menu option, and search for `IBE% messages`.
3. Modify these messages to change the text in the bins.

You can find a specific message name by viewing the respective bin JSP file.

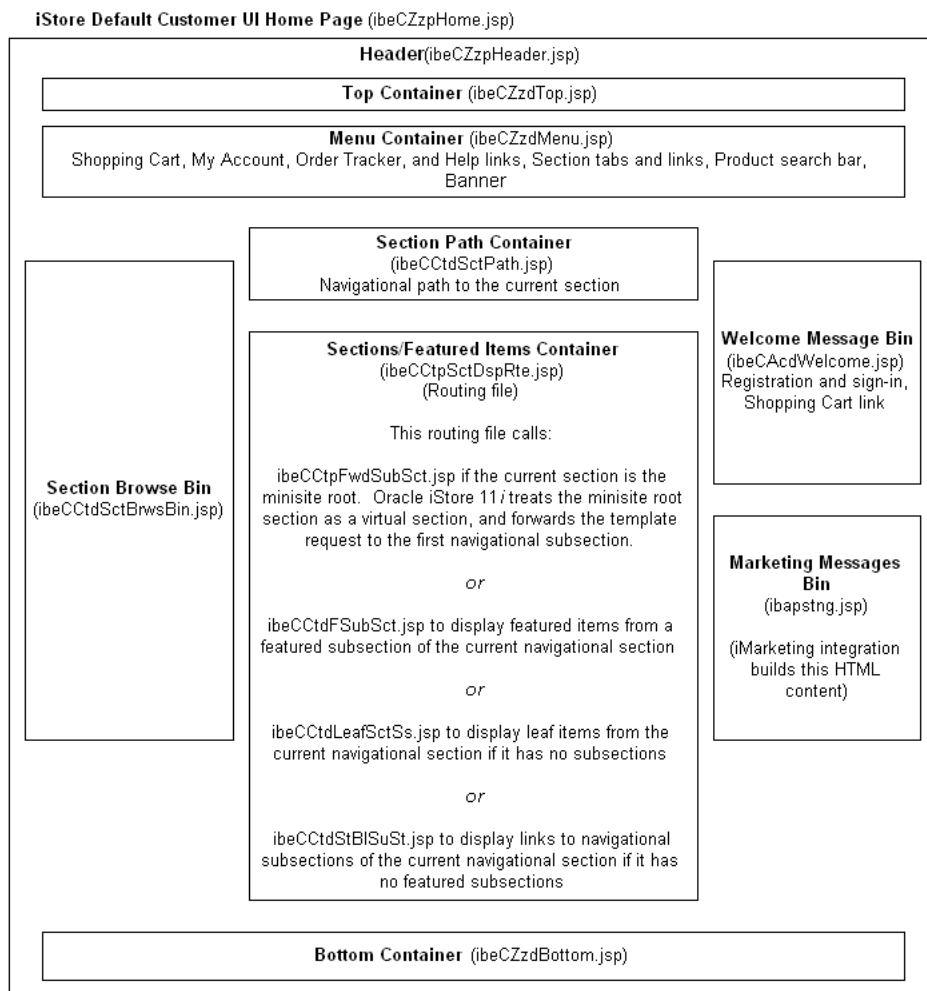
B.5.2 Changing the Layout of Bins

You can change the bin placement or remove a bin from the Customer UI by modifying the home page `ibeCZzpHome.jsp` and other corresponding JSP files. To verify that the home page is `ibeCZzpHome.jsp`, launch the Merchant UI, enter the Templates tab, and search the template catalog for Name = `STORE_HOME`. The default source file listed should be `ibeCZzpHome.jsp`.

Note: Be careful when making these changes, which affect the HTML.

The following diagram shows the layout of the bins on the default store page.

Figure B-1 Oracle iStore 11i Default Home Page Layout



B.6 Using Forms with JSPs

To use forms with JavaServer Pages, use the following procedure.

Prerequisites

None.

Steps

1. Create an HTML form in a JSP template to process user input.
2. Perform basic checks on the input that the user enters, for example, using JavaScript.
3. Pass the data to a bean that implements the business logic.

The bean processes the input (it can maintain a persistent state), and returns any results back to the user as HTML.

B.7 Using JavaBeans with JSPs

To use JavaBeans with JavaServer Pages, use the following guidelines.

<jsp:useBean>

Instantiate or locate the JavaBean instance.

```
<jsp:useBean id="mybean" scope="session"
class="hello.nameHandler" />
```

<jsp:setProperty>

Set property values in the JavaBean.

```
<jsp:setProperty name="mybean" property="*" />
```

<jsp:getProperty>

Get property values from the JavaBean.

```
<jsp:getProperty name="mybean" property="username" />
```

B.8 Adding Error Pages

To add error pages, use the following procedure.

Steps

1. Write the JavaBean (or servlet or other component) so that it throws certain exceptions under certain conditions.
2. In the JSP file, use a page directive with `errorPage` set to the name of a JSP file that will display a message to the user when the exception occurs.
3. Write an error page file using a page directive with `isErrorPage="true."` For example, see `ibeCZzdError.jsp`.
4. In the error page file, use the exception object to get information about the exception.
5. Give informative messages in the error file or the JSP file on the error.

B.9 Handling Runtime Exceptions

To handle runtime exceptions, use the following guidelines.

User Errors

To handle user errors, raise a subclass of `FrameworkException` in the API and handle it in the calling JSP.

Fatal Errors

To handle fatal errors, raise `FrameworkException` or let the original exception (for example, `SQLException`) propagate to `ibeCZzdError.jsp`.

Customizing the Catalog

This appendix first discusses the flow involved in the seeded Oracle iStore 11i catalog templates and provides the logical name, physical file, and description for each template. Understanding the interactions between the catalog templates simplifies the task of customizing them. This topic group then provides guidelines for customizing the catalog templates and discusses the necessary data setup steps.

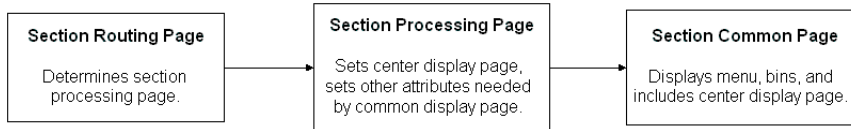
C.1 Catalog Display Overview

The catalog display follows either a section display flow or an item display flow.

C.1.1 Section Display Flow

Oracle iStore 11i uses the following flow to display a section:

1. When a section link is clicked, the request goes to `STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE` (`ibeCCtpSctDspRte.jsp`).
2. `STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE` (`ibeCCtpSctDspRte.jsp`) determines which section processing template should be used and forwards the request to that template.
3. The section processing template sets the necessary attributes in the `PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE` (including the logical template name of the center display page) and forwards to `STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON` (`ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp`).
4. `STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON` (`ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp`) displays the section.

Figure C-1 The Catalog Section Display Flow**STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE (ibeCctpSctDspRte.jsp)**

This is the routing page for sections. It contains the processing logic for determining which template to use when displaying a section. If there is no template associated with a section, the routing page determines which default template to use based on the hierarchy data setup. There are three default templates:

- STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT is used for sections with featured subsections.
- STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT is used for sections with only navigational subsections.
- STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_SINGLE is used for leaf sections.

The section routing page applies the following rules when determining which template should be used to display a section:

1. If the section is the minisite root, forward to STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_FWD (ibeCctpFwdSubSct.jsp). The minisite root section is treated as a virtual section and the request is forwarded to its first navigational subsection.
2. If the section has a template associated with it (set up as the value of "Template for displaying this section" in the Hierarchy tab of the Merchant UI), forward to that template.
3. If the section is a leaf section, forward to STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_SINGLE (ibeCctpLeafSctSs.jsp).
4. If the section is a non-leaf section and the section has featured subsections, forward to STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT (ibeCctpFSubSct.jsp).
5. Otherwise, forward to STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT (ibeCctpStBISuSt.jsp).

STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON (ibeCctdCmnSt.jsp)

This is the common display page used for displaying sections. It displays each portion of the common layout for section pages by including the JSP that handles

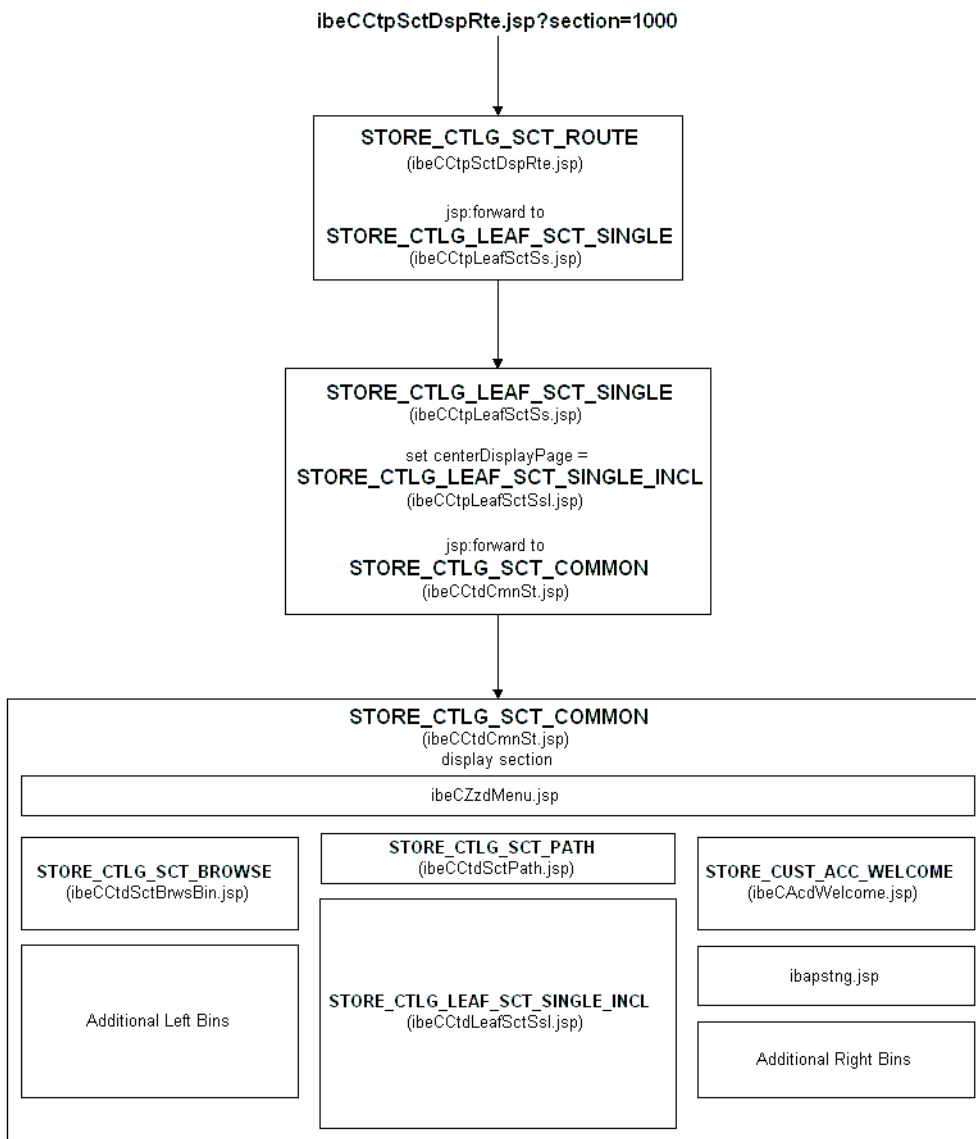
the display in that location. STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON includes the following components:

- The menu at the top of the page
- The left bins (browse bin, additional left bins) on the left side
- The center components (section path traversed, center display page) in the center of the page.
- The right bins (welcome bin, iMarketing posting, additional right bins) on the right side

Example

In the following example, assume that the data is set up such that template STORE_CTLG_LEAF_SCT_SINGLE is associated with section 1000. This example illustrates the flow through the catalog templates when a user clicks on the link `ibeCCtpSctDspRte.jsp?section=1000`.

Figure C-2 Catalog Template Flow for Link `ibeCtpSctDspRte.jsp?section=1000`



C.1.2 Item Display Flow

Oracle iStore 11i uses the following flow to display an item:

1. When an item link is clicked, the request goes to STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE (ibeCCtpItmDspRte.jsp).
2. STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE (ibeCCtpItmDspRte.jsp) determines which item template should be used (the template for display style STORE_PRODUCT_DETAILS) and forwards the request to that template. The default template is STORE_CTLG_ITEM_DETAILS (ibeCCtdItemDetail.jsp).
3. The item template displays the item detail page.

C.2 Seeded Catalog Templates

For each section display, there is a pair of templates:

- A processing page that sets attributes needed by the common display page
- A center display page which generates the HTML for the center of the page

The section processing page specifies which center display page should be used. The following naming convention can be used to identify which section processing page corresponds to which center display page.

- Section Processing Logical Name: SECTION_PROCESS_NAME
- Section Center Display Logical Name: SECTION_PROCESS_NAME_INCL
- Section Processing Physical File: ibeCCtpName.jsp
- Section Center Display Physical File: ibeCCtdNameI.jsp

Example

- Section Processing Logical Name: STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT
- Section Center Display Logical Name: STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_INCL
- Section Processing Physical File: ibeCCtpFSubSct.jsp
- Section Center Display Physical File: ibeCCtdFSubSctI.jsp

The table below provides a list of the seeded Oracle iStore 11i catalog templates with the logical name, physical file, and description of each template. You can use the table to determine whether the seeded templates meet your display needs. If customization is required, use the following table to determine which templates to use as examples.

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_BUY_PROCESS_ROUTE	ibeCCtpBuyRoute.jsp	Processing page for add to cart, express checkout, and configure. Validates parameters and forwards to the appropriate page.
STORE_CTLG_DLDN_SCT_BULLET	ibeCCtpDdLfStBl.jsp	Processing page for non-leaf section that drills down one level. For each subsection, show bulleted subsections. Sets center display page = STORE_CTLG_DLDN_SCT_BULLET_INCL
STORE_CTLG_DLDN_SCT_BULLET_INCL	ibeCCtdDdLfStBl.jsp	Display center of non-leaf section that drills down one level. For each subsection, show bulleted subsections. This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_LEAF	ibeCCtpDrillLeaf.jsp	Processing page for non-leaf section that drills down to leaf level descendent subsections. For each leaf level descendent subsection, displays the section name and the items in the section. Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_DRILL_LEAF_INCL
STORE_CTLG_DRILL_LEAF_INCL	ibeCCtdDrillLeaf.jsp	Display center of non-leaf section that drills down to leaf level descendent subsections. For each leaf level descendent subsection, displays the section name and the items in the section. This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT	ibeCCtpFSubSct.jsp	<p>Processing page for non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with single select. Item image, description, long description, and prices are displayed.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_INCL	ibeCCtdFSubSctI.jsp	<p>Display center of non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with single select. Item image, description, long description, and prices are displayed.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_FWD	ibeCCtpFwdSubSct.jsp	<p>If the section is not the minisite root and has featured subsections, forward to featured subsection display page. Otherwise, forward to display page for first navigational subsection.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_ 2COL	ibeCCtpFSuStMs2.jsp	<p>Processing page for non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with multiple select in two columns. Item description and price are displayed.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_2COL_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_ 2COL_INCL	ibeCCtdFSuStMs2I.jsp	<p>Display center of non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with multiple select in two columns. Item description and price are displayed.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_ 3COL	ibeCCtpFSuStMs3.jsp	<p>Processing page for non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with multiple select in three columns. Item description and price are displayed.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_3COL_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ FSUBSCT_MULT_ 3COL_INCL	ibeCCtdFSuStMs3I.jsp	<p>Display center of non-leaf section that displays featured subsections. For each featured subsection, displays section name and items in the section with multiple select in three columns. Item description and price are displayed.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ ITEM_DETAILS	ibeCCtdItemDetail.jsp	Display item detail page with item description, image, long description, flexfields, related items.
STORE_CTLG_ ITEM_INFO	ibeCCtdItemInfo.jsp	Display menu and item media file associated with display context STORE_PRODUCT_ADDTL_INFO
STORE_CTLG_ITM_ ROUTE	ibeCCtpItmDspRte.jsp	Item display routing page.
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_ITEM_INCL	ibeCCtdLeafItem.jsp	<p>Display leaf item within a section page.</p> <p>This template only displays an item within a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays a section.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_ITEMS	ibeCCtpLfStIts.jsp	<p>Processing page for leaf section that displays items with multiple select. Items are displayed with image, description, long description, and prices for each unit of measure.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_ITEMS_INCL</p>

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_ITEMS_ INCL	ibeCCtdLfStItsI.jsp	<p>Display center of leaf section that displays items with multiple select. Items are displayed with image, description, long description, and prices for each unit of measure.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_ MULTIPLE	ibeCCtpLfStMsL.jsp	<p>Processing page for leaf section that displays items with multiple select. Item description is a link to the item detail page.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_MULTIPLE_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_ MULTIPLE_INCL	ibeCCtdLfStMsLI.jsp	<p>Display center of leaf section that displays items with multiple select. Item description is a link to the item detail page.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_SINGLE	ibeCCtpLeafSctSs.jsp	<p>Processing page for leaf section that displays items with single select. Items are displayed with image, description, long description, and prices for each unit of measure.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_SINGLE_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ LEAF_SCT_SINGLE_ INCL	ibeCCtdLeafSctSsI.jsp	<p>Display center of leaf section that displays items with single select. Items are displayed with image, description, long description, and prices for each unit of measure.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_LF_SCT_MULT_NOLINKS	ibeCCtpLfStMsL.jsp	<p>Processing page for leaf section that displays items with multiple select. There is no link to the item detail page.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_LF_SCT_MULT_NOLINKS_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_LF_SCT_MULT_NOLINKS_INCL	ibeCCtdLfStMsLI.jsp	<p>Display center of leaf section that displays items with multiple select. There is no link to the item detail page.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BROWSE	ibeCCtdSctBrwsBin.jsp	Display section browse hierarchy.
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT	ibeCCtpStBISuSt.jsp	<p>Processing page for non-leaf section that displays bulleted navigational subsections.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_SCT_BULLET_SUBSCT_INCL	ibeCCtdStBISuStI.jsp	<p>Display center of non-leaf section that displays bulleted navigational subsections.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON	ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp	Common section display page that displays layout shared by out-of-the-box section templates.
STORE_CTLG_SCT_DTL_DPDN_ITEMS	ibeCCtpStMmDtIts.jsp	<p>Processing page for leaf section that displays items in a dropdown list. Displays section name, long description, and includes media associated with display context STORE_SECTION_ADDTL_INFO. The dropdown will display item description and price for the primary unit of measure.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_SCT_DTL_DPDN_ITEMS_INCL</p>

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
STORE_CTLG_SCT_ DTL_DPDN_ITEMS_ INCL	ibeCCtdStMmDtltsI.jsp	<p>Display center of leaf section that displays items in a dropdown list. Displays section name, long description, and includes media associated with display context STORE_SECTION_ADDTL_INFO. The dropdown will display item description and price for the primary unit of measure.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
STORE_CTLG_SCT_ PATH	ibeCCtdSctPath.jsp	Display section path traversed in the hierarchy.
STORE_CTLG_SCT_ ROUTE	ibeCCtpSctDspRte.jsp	Section display routing template. Determines which template to use when displaying a section.
STORE_CTLG_ SUBSCT_DPDN_ ITEMS	ibeCCtpChStDdItsI.jsp	<p>Processing page for non-leaf section that displays navigational subsections. For each navigational subsection, displays section image, description, long description, and items in a dropdown. The dropdown will display item description and price for the primary unit of measure.</p> <p>Set center display page = STORE_CTLG_ SUBSCT_DPDN_ITEMS_INCL</p>
STORE_CTLG_ SUBSCT_DPDN_ ITEMS_INCL	ibeCCtdChStDdItsI.jsp	<p>Display center of non-leaf section that displays navigational subsections. For each navigational subsection, displays section image, name, description, long description, and items in a dropdown. The dropdown will display item description and price for the primary unit of measure.</p> <p>This template only displays the center of a section page and should be dynamically included within a page that displays the general layout of a page.</p>
This page does not have a logical name. It is a compile-time include.	ibeCCtpPostingI.jsp	Processing page that contains logic to set inputs needed for iMarketing posting integration. This page should be a compile-time include.

Table C-1 Oracle iStore 11i Seeded Catalog Templates (Cont.)

Logical Name	Physical File	Description
This page does not have a logical name. It is a compile-time include.	ibeCCTpSetFSubSct.jsp	Processing page that contains logic to retrieve data needed when displaying featured subsections. This page should be a compile-time include in pages that display featured subsections. This page will set the values of local variables that can then be referenced. See the documentation in ibeCCTpSetFSubSct.jsp for additional details.
This page does not have a logical name. It is a compile-time include.	ibeCCTpSetLeafSct.jsp	Processing page that contains logic to retrieve data needed when displaying leaf sections. This page should be a compile-time include in the pages that display leaf sections. This page will set the values of local variables that can then be referenced. See the documentation contained in ibeCCTpSetLeafSct.jsp for additional details.

C.3 Customizing Section Templates

You can customize the section routing behavior, section browse bin, section path, and common layout, and create section pages using common or custom layouts.

C.3.1 Customizing the Section Routing Behavior

In most cases, the section routing behavior will not need changes since it is data driven. `STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE` (`ibeCCTpSctDspRte.jsp`) contains processing logic for determining the template to forward to based on the template associated with a section. If the section routing behavior needs to be changed (for example, to change the default destination pages when no template is associated with a section), customize `STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE` (`ibeCCTpSctDspRte.jsp`).

Steps

1. Copy `ibeCCTpSctDspRte.jsp` into a new JSP.
2. Make the necessary changes in the new JSP.
3. Modify the template data setup. In this case, the same logical template name should be used because `STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE` is used in all other JSPs when building links to sections. Log in to the Merchant UI and add the

necessary logical to physical template mappings for STORE_CTLG_SCT_ROUTE. On the Template Details screen, add a new source file for the new JSP. To use this source file for all minisites and all languages, add a mapping for ALL minisites and each installed language.

For example, if French and American English are installed, add two rows in "Specialty Store And Language Mappings":

- All minisites, French
- All minisites, American English

Each time a new language is added, you must add a new mapping. Do not change the mapping for ALL minisites, ALL languages. If you change this mapping, the change may be overwritten when patches are applied.

C.3.2 Customizing the Section Browse Bin

If the display of the section navigation bin needs to be changed, customize STORE_CTLG_SCT_BROWSE (ibeCCtdSctBrwsBin.jsp).

Steps

1. Copy ibeCCtdSctBrwsBin.jsp to a new JSP.
2. Make the necessary changes in the new JSP.
3. Modify the template data setup. In this case, the same logical template name should be used because STORE_CTLG_SCT_BROWSE is used in other JSPs when including the browse bin. Log in to the Merchant UI and add the necessary logical to physical template mappings for STORE_CTLG_SCT_BROWSE. On the Template Details screen, add a new source file for the new JSP. To use this source file for all minisites and all languages, add a mapping for ALL minisites and each installed language.

For example, if French and American English are installed, add two rows in "Specialty Store And Language Mappings":

- All minisites, French
- All minisites, American English.

Each time a new language is added, you must add a new mapping. Do not change the mapping for ALL minisites, ALL languages. If you change this mapping, the change may be overwritten when patches are applied.

C.3.3 Customizing the Section Path

If the display of the section path needs to be changed, customize `STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH` (`ibeCCtdSctPath.jsp`).

Steps

1. Copy `ibeCCtdSctPath.jsp` into a new JSP.
2. Make the necessary changes in the new JSP.
3. The template data setup will need to be modified. In this case, the same logical template name should be used because `STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH` is used in other JSPs when including the path traversed. Log in to the Merchant UI and add the necessary logical to physical template mappings for `STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH`. On the Template Details screen, add a new source file for the new JSP. To use this source file for all minisites and all languages, add a mapping for ALL minisites and each installed language.

For example, if French and American English are installed, add two rows in "Specialty Store And Language Mappings"

- All minisites, French
- All minisites, American English.

Each time a new language is added, you must add a new mapping. Do not change the mapping for ALL minisites, ALL languages. If you change this mapping, the change may be overwritten when patches are applied.

C.3.4 Customizing the Common Layout Used by Multiple Section Templates

In the seeded templates, all the section templates share the same layout. This layout is specified in `STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON` (`ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp`). All section pages are ultimately displayed by this page, with the center display page changing dynamically based on the attributes set by the section processing page. If the common layout model will be used, but the layout needs to be changed, customize `STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON` (`ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp`).

Steps

1. Copy `ibeCCtdCmnSt.jsp` into a new JSP.
2. Make the necessary changes in the new JSP.
3. The template data setup will need to be modified. In this case, the same logical template name should be used because the processing section JSPs forward to

STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON to display the section. Log in to the Merchant UI and add the necessary logical to physical template mappings for STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON. On the Template Details screen, add a new source file for the new JSP. To use this source file for all minisites and all languages, add a mapping for ALL minisites and each installed language.

For example, if French and American English are installed, add two rows in "Specialty Store And Language Mappings":

- All minisites, French
- All minisites, American English.

Each time a new language is added, you must add a new mapping. Do not change the mapping for ALL minisites, ALL languages. If you change this mapping, the change may be overwritten when patches are applied.

C.3.5 Creating a Section Page Using a Common Layout

To provide custom section display, create new section pages. If the new section display will use a common layout, two new JSPs need to be created.

Steps

1. Create a section processing page. This can be done by copying an existing section processing page (such as ibeCCtpFSubSct.jsp) or using the example below as a guideline.

```
<%@page language="java" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.util.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.catalog.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.store.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.displaymanager.DisplayManager" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.Logger" %>
<%@include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>

<%
String JSP_PAGE_NAME = "sectionProcesssPage.jsp";
String lSectionIdStr = "";
String lCenterDisplayPage = "";
String lBeginIndexStr = "";

/* Welcome Bin */
pageContext.setAttribute("showWelcomeBin", "true",
    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
```

```

/* Center Display Page */
lCenterDisplayPage =
DisplayManager.getTemplate("CENTER_DISPLAY_PAGE").getFileName();
if(lCenterDisplayPage == null)
{
    lCenterDisplayPage = "";
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME,
                "Null template found for logical template name " +
                "CENTER_DISPLAY_PAGE",
                Logger.ERROR);
}

pageContext.setAttribute("centerDisplayPage", lCenterDisplayPage,
                        PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

/* Get/Set section ID */
lSectionIdStr =
    (String) pageContext.getAttribute("section",
                                    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
if(lSectionIdStr == null || lSectionIdStr.equals(""))
{
    lSectionIdStr = (String) request.getParameter("section");
    if(lSectionIdStr == null)
    {
        lSectionIdStr = "";
        IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, "Section is null", Logger.ERROR);
    }
}

pageContext.setAttribute("section", lSectionIdStr,
                        PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

/* Get/Set beginIndex */
lBeginIndexStr =
(String) pageContext.getAttribute( "beginIndex",
                                PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
if (lBeginIndexStr == null || lBeginIndexStr.equals(""))
{
    lBeginIndexStr = request.getParameter("beginIndex");
    if (lBeginIndexStr != null)
    {
        pageContext.setAttribute( "beginIndex", lBeginIndexStr,
                                PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
    }
}
}

```

```

if (IBEUtil.showPosting())
{
    // set item ids in the PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE for use by
    // iMarketing postings

    int[] itemIds = new int[0];

    // code to populate itemIds based on the items that will be displayed
    // on this section page

    if (itemIds.length > 0)
        pageContext.setAttribute("itemIds", itemIds, PageContext.REQUEST_
SCOPE);
}

String lCommonPage =
    DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CTLG_SCT_COMMON").getFileName();
%>

<jsp:forward page="<%=lCommonPage%>" />

```

2. Create a center display page. This can be done by copying an existing section center display page (such as `ibeCCtdFSubSctI.jsp`) or using the example below as a guideline.

```

<%@include file="ibeCZzpRuntimeIncl.jsp" %>
<%@page language="java" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.util.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.catalog.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.store.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.displaymanager.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.resources.Architecture" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.interfaces.MessageManagerInter" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.Logger" %>

<%
    // processing logic to retrieve all section and item information that will
    // be displayed on the page

    boolean bSectionLoaded = false;
    Section s = null;
    // declare variables for other objects that will be displayed:
    // for example, featured subsections, navigational subsections, items,
    // item prices, etc.

```

```

String lSectionIdStr =
    IBEUtil.nonNull((String)pageContext.getAttribute("section",
                                                    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE));

try {
    int lSectionId = Integer.parseInt(lSectionIdStr);
    s = Section.load(lSectionId, Section.DEEP);
    bSectionLoaded = true;

    // additional code to retrieve objects that will be displayed on the
page:
    // for example, featured subsections, navigational subsections, items,
    // item prices, etc.

} catch (NumberFormatException e) {
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, "Could not parse section id=");
    IBEUtil.lod(lSectionIdStr);
} catch (SectionNotFoundException e) {
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, "Could not load section. Section id=");
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, lSectionIdStr);
}

if (bSectionLoaded)
{
%>

<table width="100%">
<tr>
<td valign="top" width="100%" >
<!-- start middle column content-->

<%-- code to display section --%>

</td></tr></table>
<%
} // end section was loaded
%>

```

3. In the Merchant UI, create a new logical template for the section processing page. Make sure that you create the template as one that "Displays: section."
4. In the Merchant UI, create a new logical template for the center display page. Make sure that you create the template as one that "Displays: others."

5. Modify the section processing page as needed.

In the JSP, change the logical template name used for the center display page to be the logical template name created for the new center display page. Change

```
lCenterDisplayPage =
    DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CTLG_FSUBSCT_INCL").getFileName();
```

to

```
lCenterDisplayPage =
    DisplayManager.getTemplate("CENTER_DISPLAY_PAGE").getFileName();
```

If Oracle iMarketing postings will be used, an `int[]` containing the item IDs of the items that will be displayed on the page must be set in the `PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE`. There are examples of how to do this in the seeded templates.

6. Modify the display page as needed.

Retrieve the necessary section and item information using the Section and Item APIs.

Display the information as desired.

7. In the Merchant UI, navigate to the section(s) that will use this display. In the "Template used to display this section" pull-down menu, select the section processing page created in step 3. Click **Update**.

C.3.6 Creating a Section Page With a Custom Layout

To provide custom section display, create new section pages. If the new section display will use its own custom layout, only one new JSP needs to be created.

Steps

1. Create a section display template. See the example below.

```
<%@include file="jtfincl.jsp" %>
<%@page language="java" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.util.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.catalog.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.store.*" %>
<%@page import="java.math.BigDecimal" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.Logger" %>

<%@ include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>
```

```
<%
String JSP_PAGE_NAME = "mySectionJsp.jsp";
MessageManagerInter msgMgr =
    Architecture.getMessageManagerInstance();
int lSectionId = -1;
String lSectionIdStr = "";
String lShowWelcomeBinStr = "";
boolean bShowWelcomeBin = true;
String browsePage = "", pathPage = "", welcomePage = "";
Section lSection = null;

// declare variables for other objects that will be
// displayed: for example, featured subsections, items, item prices, etc.

/* Get section ID String */
lSectionIdStr =
    (String)pageContext.getAttribute("section", PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
try
{
    lSectionId = Integer.parseInt(lSectionIdStr);
}
catch(NumberFormatException e)
{
    lSectionId = StoreMinisite.getRootSectionID().intValue();
}

/* Get show welcome bin */
lShowWelcomeBinStr =
    (String)pageContext.getAttribute("showWelcomeBin",
                                    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
if(lShowWelcomeBinStr == null || lShowWelcomeBinStr.equals(""))
{
    lShowWelcomeBinStr = "true";
}

if(lShowWelcomeBinStr.equalsIgnoreCase("false"))
{
    bShowWelcomeBin = false;
}

/*
 * Get the value of all the pages and bins to display
 */

/* Section Hierarchy Tree Browse Bin */
```

```
        if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_BIN"))
        {
            browsePage =
            DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CTLG_SCT_
            BROWSE").getFileName();if(browsePage == null)
            {
                browsePage = "";
            }
        }

        /* Section Section Path Bin */
        if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_PATH"))
        {
            pathPage =
            DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH").getFileName();
            if(pathPage == null)
            {
                pathPage = "";
            }
        }

        /* Welcome Page Bin */
        if(bShowWelcomeBin)
        {
            welcomePage =
            DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CUST_ACC_WELCOME").getFileName();

            if(welcomePage == null || welcomePage.equals(""))
            {
                bShowWelcomeBin = false;
                IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME,
                    "Welcome Page is either null or not specified",
                    Logger.ERROR);
            }
        }

        if (IBEUtil.showPosting())
            pageContext.setAttribute("pageType", "SECTION",
                PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

        /* load section and other objects that will be displayed */
        try
        {
            lSection = Section.load(lSectionId);
```

```
// additional code to retrieve other objects that will be displayed
// on the page: for example, featured subsections, navigational
// subsections, items, item prices, etc.

    if (IBEUtil.showPosting())
    {
        // set item ids in the PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE for use by
        // iMarketing postings

        int[] itemIds = new int[0];

        // code to populate itemIds based on the items that will be
displayed
        // on this section page

        if (itemIds.length > 0)
            pageContext.setAttribute("itemIds", itemIds,
                                    PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
    }
}
catch(SectionNotFoundException ex)
{
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME,
               "Could not load (shallow) section with ID" + lSectionId,
               Logger.ERROR);
    lSection = null;
}

if(lSection != null)
{
    pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle", lSection.getDisplayName(),
                            PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
}
else
{
    pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle", "", PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
}

%>

<%@ include file="ibeCctpPostingI.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="ibeCzsdTop.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="ibeCzsdMenu.jsp" %>
```

```

<!-- body section ----->
<table border="0" width="100%">

  <tr>
    <td> &nbsp; </td>

    <!-- left column ----->
    <td valign="top">

      <%-- sections bin -----%>
      <%
        if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_BIN") &&
          !browsePage.equals(""))
        {
      %>
        <jsp:include page="<%=browsePage%>" flush="true" /><br>
      <%
        }
      %>
    </td>

    <!-- center column ----->
    <td valign="top" width="100%">
      <%
        if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_PATH") &&
          !pathPage.equals(""))
        {
      %>
        <table width="100%">
          <tr>
            <td colspan="2" class="smallLink">
              <jsp:include page="<%=pathPage%>" flush="true" />
            </td>
            <td>
              &nbsp; </td>
          </tr>
        </table>
      <%
        }

        if (lSection != null)
        {
          // code to display section/items.
          // for examples, see out of the box section center display templates

```

```

    }
%>
</td>

<!-- right column ----->
<td valign="top">
    <%-- RHS bins -----%>

    <%-- welcome bin ------%>
<%
if(bShowWelcomeBin)
{
%>
    <jsp:include page="<%=welcomePage%>" flush="true" /><br>
<%
}
%>

<%
if(IBEUtil.showPosting())
{
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, "iMarketing posting - BEGIN");
    try {
%>
        <jsp:include page="ibapstng.jsp" flush="true" /><br>
<%
    } catch (Throwable t) {
        IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME,
            "Error occurred while including iMarketing page");
    }
    IBEUtil.log(JSP_PAGE_NAME, "iMarketing posting - END");
}
%>

</td>
</tr>
</table>

<%@ include file="ibeCZzdBottom.jsp" %>

```

2. In the Merchant UI, create a new logical template for the section display page. Make sure that you create the template as one that "Displays: section."
3. In the Merchant UI, navigate to the section(s) that will use this display. In the "Template used to display this section" pull-down menu, select the section display page created in step 2. Click **Update**.

C.4 Customizing Item Templates

You can customize item routing behavior and create item detail templates.

C.4.1 Customizing the Item Routing Behavior

In most cases, the item routing behavior will not need changes since it is data driven. `STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE (ibeCCTpItmDspRte.jsp)` contains processing logic for determining the template to forward to based on the template associated with display context `STORE_PRODUCT_DETAILS` for a particular item. If the item routing behavior needs to be changed (for example, to change the display context that is used), customize `STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE (ibeCCTpItmDspRte.jsp)`.

Steps

1. Copy `ibeCCTpItmDspRte.jsp` into a new JSP.
2. Modify the new JSP as needed. For example, change the display context that is used. If modifying the display context, make sure that all templates associated with the new display context produce HTML for displaying an entire page.
3. The template data setup will need to be modified. In this case, the same logical template name should be used because `STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE` is used in all other JSPs when building links for items. Log in to the Merchant UI and add the necessary logical to physical template mappings for `STORE_CTLG_ITM_ROUTE`. On the Template Details screen, add a new source file for the new JSP. To use this source file for all minisites and all languages, add a mapping for ALL minisites and each installed language.

For example, if French and American English are installed, add two rows in "Specialty Store And Language Mappings":

- All minisites, French
- All minisites, American English.

Each time a new language is added, you must add a new mapping. Do not change the mapping for ALL minisites, ALL languages. If you change this mapping, the change may be overwritten when patches are applied.

C.4.2 Creating an Item Detail Template

To provide a custom display of the item detail page, create a new item detail page.

Steps

1. Copy `ibeCCtdItemDetail.jsp` into a new JSP or use the example below as a guideline.

```
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.order.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.catalog.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.ibe.store.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.displaymanager.*" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.base.Logger" %>
<%@page import="oracle.apps.jtf.minisites.*" %>

<%@ include file="ibeCZzpHeader.jsp" %>
<%
    MessageManagerInter msgMgr = Architecture.getMessageManagerInstance();
    pageContext.setAttribute("_pageTitle",
        msgMgr.getMessage("IBE_PRMT_CT_PRODUCT_DETAILS"),
        PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

    String lItemId =
        IBEUtil.nonNull((String)pageContext.getAttribute("item",
            PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE));

    if (lItemId.equals(""))
    {
        lItemId = IBEUtil.nonNull(request.getParameter("item"));
        pageContext.setAttribute("item", lItemId, PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);
    }

    if (IBEUtil.showPosting())
    {
        // used by ibeCCtpPostingI.jsp
        pageContext.setAttribute("pageType", "ITEM", PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

        // set itemIDs[] for iMarketing posting
        try {
            int[] itemIds = new int[1];
            String itemIdStr =
                (String) pageContext.getAttribute("item", PageContext.REQUEST_
SCOPE);
            itemIds[0] = Integer.parseInt(itemIdStr);
            pageContext.setAttribute("itemIds", itemIds, PageContext.REQUEST_
```

```
SCOPE);
    } catch (NumberFormatException e) {}
    }
%>

<%@ include file="ibeCctpPostingI.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdTop.jsp" %>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdMenu.jsp" %>

<%
    String lSectionId = "";
    int sectid = 0, itmid = 0;

    Item itm = null;

    // declare variables for other objects that will be
    // displayed: for example, item images, item prices, item flexfields,
    // related items, etc.

    lSectionId = IBEUtil.nonNull(request.getParameter("section"));
    if (lSectionId.equals(""))
        lSectionId =
            IBEUtil.nonNull((String)pageContext.getAttribute("section",
                PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE));

    /* sections path */
    if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_PATH"))
    {
        try {
            sectid = Integer.parseInt(lSectionId);
            pageContext.setAttribute("section", String.valueOf(sectid),
                PageContext.REQUEST_SCOPE);

            pathPage =
                DisplayManager.getTemplate("STORE_CTLG_SCT_PATH").getFileName();
        } catch (NumberFormatException e) { }
        if(pathPage == null)
            pathPage = "";
    }

    try {
        itmid = Integer.parseInt(lItemId);
        itm = Item.load(itmid, Item.DEEP);
        bItemLoaded = true;
    }
```

```

// additional code to retrieve other objects that will be displayed
// on the page: for example, item images, item prices, related items, etc.

} catch (NumberFormatException e) {
    IBEUtil.log("ibeCctdItemDetail.jsp", "Could not parse item id="
        +lItemId);
} catch (ItemNotFoundException e) {
    IBEUtil.log("ibeCctdItemDetail.jsp", "Could not load item id="+lItemId,
        Logger.ERROR);
}

if (bItemLoaded)
{
%>

<!-- body section
----->
<table border="0" width="100%">

<%
    if (IBEUtil.showPosting()) {
%>
<!------- iMarketing integration ----->
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center">
<% try {
%>
        <jsp:include page="ibapstng.jsp" flush="true" />
<% } catch (Throwable e) {
        IBEUtil.log("ibeCctdItemDetail.jsp", "iMarketing error",
Logger.ERROR);
    }
%>
</td></tr>
<% } //end iMarketing installed
%>
<tr><td>&nbsp;&nbsp;&nbsp;&nbsp;</td>
<%
    if(IBEUtil.useFeature("IBE_USE_SECTION_PATH") &&
        !pathPage.equals(""))
    {
%>
        <td colspan="4" class="smallLink">
            <jsp:include page="<%=pathPage%" flush="true" />
        </td>
<% }

```

```

%>
</tr>
<tr><td valign="top"> &nbsp; </td>

<!-- center column
----->
<td valign="top" width="70%">
  <table border="0" cellpadding="0" cellspacing="0">
<%-- code to display item --%>
  </table>
</td>

<!-- right column
----->
<td valign="top" width="20%">
  <table border="0" cellpadding="0" cellspacing="0">
<%-- code to display right bins --%>
  </table>
  <p>&nbsp;</p>
  <p>&nbsp;</p>
  </td></tr></table> <%-- end page table --%>
<% } // end item loaded
%>
<%@ include file="ibeCZzdBottom.jsp" %>
<!-- ibeCCTdItemDetail.jsp end -->

```

2. Modify the new item detail page as needed.

Retrieve the necessary item information using the Item APIs.

Display the information as desired.

- 3.** The template data setup will need to be modified. In the Merchant UI, create a new logical template for the new item detail display page. Make sure that you create the template as one that "Displays: category."
- 4.** If the new item detail page should be used as the default template for a display context (such as STORE_PRODUCT_DETAILS), log in to the Merchant UI and choose **Setup > Display Styles**. Click the display style whose default template should be changed. Change the "Default Template" to the item detail display page created in step 3.
- 5.** To associate the new item detail template to the appropriate display style at the item level:
- a.** In the Products tab, find the desired product.

Oracle iStore 11i User Interface Reference

This appendix provides descriptions of user interface (UI) tabs, screens, forms, and fields for the Oracle iStore 11i application. The tables in this group summarize the UI objects, types, descriptions, and usage for each screen described.

D.1 Specialty Stores

Use the Specialty Stores screen to view a detailed list of all specialty stores, remove unwanted specialty stores, and link to other screens to create or modify specialty stores.

Table D-1 Specialty Stores Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Remove	Checkbox	Use to select or deselect specialty stores for removal.
Specialty Store Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Store Detail screen for the specialty store.
Create	Button	Click to start the process of creating a new specialty store in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.2, "Overview of Creating Your Store"](#)

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.2 Specialty Store Detail

Use the Specialty Store Detail screen to enter or modify information for your specialty stores.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-2 Specialty Store Detail Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Store Flags	Hyperlink	Click to choose the root section for the specialty store and to determine whether the store is active and available to customers, is ATP enabled, and allows walk-in customers, in the Store Flags screen.
Supported Responsibilities	Hyperlink	Click to choose the customer responsibilities that the specialty store supports in the Supported Responsibilities screen.
Access Restrictions	Hyperlink	Click to set up restrictions on access to the specialty store according to the customer's organization in the Access Restrictions screen.
Currencies and Price Lists	Hyperlink	Click to display a listing of available currencies in the Currencies and Price Lists screen. Multiple currencies can be selected for a specialty store. The user's preference determines which currency will be used for the store. If user preference is not specified, the default settings will be used.
Specialty Store Name	Text field	Enter a unique name for the specialty store.
Specialty Store Code	Text field	Enter a unique specialty store code.

Table D–2 Specialty Store Detail Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Description	Text field	Enter a unique description for the specialty store.
Start Date	Text field	Enter the date when the specialty store should first be active and available to customers, in the format DD-MON-YYYY.
End Date	Text field	Enter the date when the specialty store should no longer be active and available to customers, in the format DD-MON-YYYY.
Calendar	Button	Click this to view a calendar in the Select a Date pop-up window. Search for a date and click on it to populate the Start Date or End Date fields with that date.
Languages	Section	Use this section of the screen to specify languages for the specialty store. Multiple languages can be selected for a specialty store. The user's preference determines which language will be used for the store. If user preference is not specified, the default settings will be used.
Select	Checkbox	Use to select or deselect languages for the specialty store.
Default Language	Pull-down menu	Use to specify the default language for the specialty store when user preference is not specified.
Continue	Button	Click to continue the process of creating a specialty store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.3 Store Flags

Use the Store Flags screen to choose a root section for the specialty store from the Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy and to determine whether your specialty store will:

- Be ATP Enabled for Oracle Inventory
- Allow walk-in customers (customers who have not logged in)
- Check user responsibility

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-3 Store Flags Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Specialty Store Name	Read-only field	Displays the name of the specialty store you are modifying.
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify basic information such as specialty store name, description, and language information in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Supported Responsibilities	Hyperlink	Click to choose the customer responsibilities that the specialty store supports in the Supported Responsibilities screen.
Access Restrictions	Hyperlink	Click to set up restrictions on access to the specialty store according to the customer's organization in the Access Restrictions screen.
Currencies and Price Lists	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify currency and price list information such as walk-in, registered, and business customer price lists, orderable limits, and default currency in the Currencies and Price Lists screen.
ATP Enabled	Pull-down menu	Select Yes or No to specify whether ATP information will be provided from Oracle Inventory.

Table D-3 Store Flags Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Walkin Customers Enabled	Pull-down menu	Select Yes or No to specify whether customers who have not logged in can view the store.
Check User Responsibility	Pull-down menu	Select Yes or No to specify whether the specialty store checks the customer's responsibilities before displaying available responsibilities. If you choose Yes , the list of specialty store-responsibility combinations that displays when the customer logs in shows only the responsibilities that the customer has for the specialty store, instead of all supported responsibilities.
Root Section	Field	Click the Go button to open a window showing the Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy tree. Highlight the section you want as the root section of the current specialty store, then click Done to close the hierarchy tree window.
Continue	Button	Click to continue the process of creating a specialty store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.4 Supported Responsibilities

Use the Supported Responsibilities screen to select the responsibilities that the specialty store allows. The responsibility with which a customer logs in determines the operating unit against which any orders are placed.

Table D–4 Supported Responsibilities Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Specialty Store Name	Read-only field	Displays the name of the specialty store you are modifying.
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify basic information such as specialty store name, description, and language information in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Store Flags	Hyperlink	Click to choose the root section for the specialty store and to determine whether the store is active and available to customers, is ATP enabled, and allows walk-in customers, in the Store Flags screen.
Access Restrictions	Hyperlink	Click to set up restrictions on access to the specialty store according to the customer's organization in the Access Restrictions screen.
Currencies and Price Lists	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify currency and price list information such as walk-in, registered, and business customer price lists, orderable limits, and default currency in the Currencies and Price Lists screen.
Application Name	Pull-down menu	Use this to filter the list of supported responsibilities by application. Choose the application from the pull-down menu and click Go . The Supported Responsibilities screen refreshes with a list of only the supported responsibilities that belong to the application.
Remove	Checkbox	Check this to remove a responsibility from the specialty store.

Table D-4 Supported Responsibilities Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Display Name	Text field	Enter the name by which this specialty store-responsibility combination appears as an option in the Customer UI after the customer logs in.
Application Name	Column heading	This column displays the application to which the responsibility belongs.
Responsibility Key	Column heading	This column displays the responsibility keys.
Responsibility Name	Column heading	This column displays the responsibility names.
Start Date	Text field	Enter the date when the specialty store should first be active and available to customers, in the format DD-MON-YYYY.
End Date	Text field	Enter the date when the specialty store should no longer be active and available to customers, in the format DD-MON-YYYY.
Calendar	Button	Click this to view a calendar in the Select a Date pop-up window. Search for a date and click on it to populate the Start Date or End Date fields with that date.
Order	Text field	In the Order text fields, enter numbers to indicate the order in which these specialty store-responsibility combinations should appear in the Customer UI list.
Add Responsibility	Button	Click to add a responsibility to the specialty store. The Select Responsibility window opens. Search for responsibilities by application name and responsibility name, key, or description, using the wildcard character % if necessary. Check the Select checkbox next to the responsibilities that you want the specialty store to support, and click Add . Click Done when you finish adding responsibilities.
Continue	Button	Click to continue the process of creating a specialty store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.

Table D-4 Supported Responsibilities Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.5 Access Restrictions

Use the Access Restrictions screen to restrict access to a specialty store according to the customer's organization.

Table D-5 Access Restrictions Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Specialty Store Name	Hyperlink	Displays the name of the specialty store you are modifying. Click to view the Specialty Store Detail screen for this specialty store.
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify basic information such as specialty store name, description, and language information in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Store Flags	Hyperlink	Click to choose the root section for the specialty store and to determine whether the store is active and available to customers, is ATP enabled, and allows walk-in customers, in the Store Flags screen.
Supported Responsibilities	Hyperlink	Click to choose the customer responsibilities that the specialty store supports in the Supported Responsibilities screen.

Table D–5 Access Restrictions Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Currencies and Price Lists	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify currency and price list information such as walk-in, registered, and business customer price lists, orderable limits, and default currency in the Currencies and Price Lists screen.
No Restriction	Radio button	Highlight this if you want customers from any organization to be able to access the specialty store.
Include the following organizations	Radio button	Highlight this if you want customers only from the organizations listed in this page to be able to access the specialty store.
Exclude the following organizations	Radio button	Highlight this if you want customers only from the organizations listed in this page to be unable to access the specialty store.
Remove	Checkbox	Check this to remove an organization from the list.
Organization Name	Column heading	This column displays the names of the organizations that you have chosen.
Account Number	Column heading	This column displays the account numbers of the organizations that you have chosen.
Start Date	Text field	Enter the date when the inclusion or exclusion of the organization is first effective.
End Date	Text field	Enter the date when the inclusion or exclusion of the organization is no longer effective.
Calendar	Button	Click this to view a calendar in the Select a Date pop-up window. Search for a date and click on it to populate the Start Date or End Date fields with that date.
Add Organization	Button	Click this to add an organization to your list. The Select Organization window opens. Search for an organization by name or account number. Check the Select checkbox next to the organizations that you want to add, and click Add . Click Done when you finish adding organizations to the list.

Table D-5 Access Restrictions Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Continue	Button	Click to continue the process of creating a specialty store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.6 Currencies and Price Lists

Use the Currencies and Price Lists screen to choose the currencies available in the specialty store, to choose price lists for walk-in customers, registered customers, and business partners, and to set ordering limits.

Table D-6 Currencies and Price Lists Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Multimedia Components	Subtab	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen.
Display Styles	Subtab	Click to view the Display Styles screen.
Specialty Store Name	Read-only field	Displays the name of the specialty store you are modifying.
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify basic information such as specialty store name, description, and language information in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Store Flags	Hyperlink	Click to choose the root section for the specialty store and to determine whether the store is active and available to customers, is ATP enabled, and allows walk-in customers, in the Store Flags screen.
Supported Responsibilities	Hyperlink	Click to choose the customer responsibilities that the specialty store supports in the Supported Responsibilities screen.

Table D-6 Currencies and Price Lists Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Access Restrictions	Hyperlink	Click to set up restrictions on access to the specialty store according to the customer's organization in the Access Restrictions screen.
Select	Checkbox	Check to select a currency to be supported by the specialty store.
Currency	Column heading	Lists available currencies from Oracle Order Management.
Walkin Customer Price List	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose a price list for customers who do not register in the specialty store. The price list options come from Oracle Order Management.
Registered Customer Price List	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose a price list for registered customers in the specialty store. The price list options come from Oracle Order Management.
Business Partner Price List	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose a price list for business partners in the specialty store. The price list options come from Oracle Order Management.
Orderable Limit	Text field	Enter the maximum possible total for an order in the specialty store.
Default Currency	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose a default currency for the specialty store. Anonymous users and users without cookies see the store in this currency when they first enter the store.
Continue	Button	Click to continue the process of creating a specialty store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.7 Supported Business Units

Use the Supported Business Units screen to specify the business units from Oracle General Ledger that the specialty store will support.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-7 Supported Business Units Screen UI Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify basic information such as specialty store name, description, and language information in the Specialty Store Detail screen.
Store Flags	Hyperlink	Click to choose the root section for the specialty store and to determine whether the store is active and available to customers, is ATP enabled, and allows walk-in customers, in the Store Flags screen.
Currencies and Price Lists	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify currency and price list information such as walk-in, registered, and business customer price lists, orderable limits, and default currency in the Currencies and Price Lists screen.
Select	Checkbox	Use to select or deselect business units to be supported.
Default Business Unit	Pull-down menu	Specifies the business unit that will be used when no preference is set for the store.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.4, "Creating Specialty Stores"](#)

D.8 Multimedia

Use the Multimedia screen to view a detailed list of Oracle iStore 11i multimedia, search for multimedia, and remove unwanted multimedia.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–8 *Multimedia Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Lookup	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose the field on which to search for multimedia objects.
Remove	Checkbox	Used to select or deselect multimedia for removal.
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Details screen.
Programmatic Access Name	Column heading	Lists the programmatic access name for the multimedia object.
Keywords	Column heading	Lists the keywords specified during the cataloging of the multimedia object.
Description	Column heading	Lists the description specified during the cataloging of the multimedia object.
Displays	Column heading	Indicates whether the multimedia object is available for use in section pages, category pages, or store Web pages that do not display products.
Default Source File for All Sites and Languages	Column heading	Lists the default source file chosen during the cataloging of the multimedia for use in all specialty stores and languages.
Create	Button	Click to create a new multimedia object in the Multimedia Details screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5, "Customizing Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5.1, "Creating Media Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.5.2, "Cataloging Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.11, "Creating Images for Products"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.9 Multimedia Details

Use the Multimedia Details screen to create Oracle iStore 11*i* multimedia, modify multimedia information, and view a list of media source files assigned to the multimedia object.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–9 *Multimedia Details Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
View All Mappings	Hyperlink	Click to view each source file name assigned to this multimedia object and its relationship to specialty stores and languages.
Name	Text field	Enter the multimedia object's name, which is the common name by which it is referred to during the planning stage.
Keywords	Text field	Enter keywords for the multimedia object to enable a keyword-based search for this multimedia object in other screens.
Programmatic Access Name	Text field	Enter the programmatic access name by which the multimedia object will be accessed from templates.
Default Source File for All Sites and Languages	Text field	Enter the default media source file for the multimedia object in all specialty stores and languages. Enter the location of the file beginning from the OA_MEDIA directory.
Description	Text field	Enter a description for the multimedia object to enable a description-based search for this multimedia object in other screens.
Source File for Other Sites and Languages	Section	Choose source files for the same multimedia object, to be used in different language and specialty store combinations.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to remove the mapping of the media source file to the language and specialty store.

Table D–9 Multimedia Details Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Source File	Hyperlink	Links to Source File Details screen.
Add Source File	Button	Click to map a non-default source file to a specialty store and language combination in the Source File Details screen for this multimedia object.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5, "Customizing Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5.1, "Creating Media Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.5.2, "Cataloging Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.11, "Creating Images for Products"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.10 Multimedia Components

Use the Multimedia Components screen to view a detailed list of all multimedia components, remove unwanted multimedia components, and link to other screens to create or modify multimedia components.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–10 Multimedia Components Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Remove	Checkbox	Check to select a multimedia component for removal.
Name	Hyperlink	Click the name of the multimedia component to view its details in the Multimedia Components Detail screen.

Table D–10 Multimedia Components Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Programmatic Access Name	Column heading	Displays the programmatic access name for the multimedia component.
Description	Column heading	Displays the descriptive information entered when the multimedia component was created.
Default Multimedia	Column heading	Displays the default multimedia name assigned to the multimedia component.
Default Source File	Column heading	Displays the default source file (physical file) for the default multimedia name assigned to the multimedia component.
Create	Button	Click to create a new multimedia component in the Multimedia Component Detail screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.6, "Cataloging Multimedia Components"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.11 Multimedia Component Details

Use the Multimedia Component Details screen to enter or modify information for a multimedia component.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–11 Multimedia Component Details Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Name	Text field	Enter a unique name for the multimedia component.
Programmatic Access Name	Text field	Enter the programmatic access name for the multimedia component.

Table D–11 Multimedia Component Details Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Description	Text field	Enter a description for the multimedia component to enable a description-based search for this multimedia component in other screens.
Default Multimedia	Text field	Enter the default multimedia name for the multimedia component.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.6, "Cataloging Multimedia Components"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.12 Templates

Use the Templates screen to view a list of Oracle iStore 11i templates, search for specific templates, and remove templates from the application.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–12 Templates Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Lookup	Pull-down menu	Use this to choose the field on which to search for templates.
Remove	Checkbox	Used to select or deselect templates for removal.
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Template Details screen for the template.
Programmatic Access Name	Column heading	Lists the programmatic access names for each template.

Table D–12 Templates Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Keywords	Column heading	Lists any keywords specified during the cataloging of the template.
Description	Column heading	Lists the description specified during the cataloging of the template.
Displays	Column heading	This column specifies whether the template applies to section pages, category pages, or other storefront pages that do not display products.
Default Source File for All Sites and Languages	Column heading	Lists the default source file for the template in all specialty stores and languages, which is specified during the cataloging of the template.
Create	Button	Click to create a template. Links to the Template Details screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7, "Customizing Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7.1, "Creating Template Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.7.2, "Choosing Template Names"](#)

[Section 2.7.3, "Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Appendix A, "Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings"](#)

D.13 Template Details

Use the Template Details screen to create Oracle iStore 11i templates, modify template information, and view a list of the JSP source files assigned to the template.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–13 *Template Details Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
View All Mappings	Hyperlink	Click to view the View All Mappings screen for this template.
Name	Text field	Enter the common name for the template, by which it is referred to during the planning stage.
Keywords	Text field	Enter keywords for the template to enable a keyword-based search for this template in other screens.
Programmatic Access Name	Text field	Enter the name by which the template is referred to in the JSPs.
Displays	Pull-down menu	Use to select whether the template will be available to display a section (section) or a category (category), or will be used on Web pages that do not feature products (others). If the template is product-specific, choose category from the drop down list.
Default Source File For All Sites and Languages	Text field	Enter the JSP to be used as the default source file for this template if a non-default language or specialty store mapping is not defined.
Description	Text field	Enter a description for the template to enable a description-based search for this template in other screens.
Source File for Other Site and Languages	Section	Choose source files for the same template, to be used in different language and specialty store combinations.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to remove the mapping of the template source file to the language and specialty store.
Source File	Hyperlink	Click to view the Source File Details screen.

Table D–13 *Template Details Screen Reference (Cont.)*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Add Source File	Button	Click to map a non-default source file to a specialty store and language combination in the Source File Details screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7, "Customizing Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7.1, "Creating Template Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.7.2, "Choosing Template Names"](#)

[Section 2.7.3, "Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Appendix A, "Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings"](#)

D.14 View All Mappings

Use the View All Mappings screen to view a list of the source files assigned to a template name and the source file mappings to specialty store and language combinations.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–14 *View All Mappings Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Template Details and Source Files	Hyperlink	Click to view the Template Details screen for the current template.
Specialty Store	Column heading	Lists the specialty store to which the indicated source file for the current template is mapped.
Languages	Column heading	Lists the language to which the indicated source file for the current template is mapped.

Table D–14 View All Mappings Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Source File Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Source File Details screen.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7, "Customizing Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7.1, "Creating Template Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.7.2, "Choosing Template Names"](#)

[Section 2.7.3, "Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Appendix A, "Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings"](#)

D.15 Templates - Assigned Categories

Use the Templates - Assigned Categories screen to view the categories to which a template is assigned and remove the template from categories. This screen is only available for templates that are specified for category use in the Template Details screen.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–15 Templates - Assigned Categories Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Template Name	Text	Shows the name of the current template.
Template Details and Source Files	Hyperlink	Click to view the Template Details screen for the template.
View All Mappings	Hyperlink	Click to view the View All Mappings screen for the template.
Lookup	Pull-down menu/Text field	Use the menu to choose the field on which to search for categories to which the template is assigned. Enter search criteria in the text field and click Go to execute search. % can be used for a wild card character search.

Table D–15 Templates - Assigned Categories Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Remove	Checkbox	Check to select the categories from which you want to remove the template.
Category Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category - Templates Assigned screen for the category.
Description	Column heading	This column lists descriptions for the categories to which the template is assigned.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.
Select All	Button	Click to select all the categories and remove the template from them.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7, "Customizing Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7.3, "Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.16 Source File Details

Use the Source File Details screen to assign source files to multimedia and templates and to map the source files to specific specialty stores and languages.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–16 Source File Details Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Details screen or Template Details screen for the multimedia object or template to which the source file is assigned.

Table D–16 Source File Details Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Source File Name	Text field	Enter a media source file name starting from the OA_MEDIA directory for a multimedia object, or a JSP source file name for a template.
Specialty Store Language Mapping	Section	Map multimedia and template source files to combinations of specialty stores and languages to override the default source file for all sites and languages.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to remove the source file from assignment to the listed specialty store and language.
Specialty Store	Pull-down menu	Use this to select the specialty store to which the source file will be mapped.
Languages	Pull-down menu	Use this to select the language to which the source file will be mapped.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5, "Customizing Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.5.1, "Creating Media Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.5.2, "Cataloging Multimedia"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7, "Customizing Templates"](#)

[Section 2.7.1, "Creating Template Source Files"](#)

[Section 2.7.3, "Cataloging Templates in the Template Manager"](#)

[Appendix A, "Oracle iStore 11i Template Mappings"](#)

D.17 Display Styles

Use the Display Styles screen to view a detailed list of all display styles, remove unwanted display styles, and link to other screens to create or modify display styles.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–17 *Display Styles Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Remove	Checkbox	Check to select a display style for removal.
Name	Hyperlink	Click the name of the display style to view its Display Styles Details screen.
Programmatic Access Name	Column heading	Displays the programmatic access name for the display style.
Description	Column heading	Displays the descriptive information entered when the display style was created.
Default Template	Column heading	Displays the default template for the display style.
Default Source File	Column heading	Displays the default source file (physical file) for the default template assigned to the display style.
Create	Button	Click to begin creating a new display style in the Display Style Details screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.18 Display Style Details

Use the Display Style Details screen to enter or modify information for a display style.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–18 *Display Style Details Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Name	Text field	Enter or modify the display style name.
Programmatic Access Name	Text field	Enter or modify the programmatic access name for the display style.
Description	Text field	Enter or modify the display style description to enable a description-based search for this display style in other screens.
Default Template	Text field	Enter or modify the default template for the display style.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.19 Hierarchy

Use the Hierarchy screen to create the overall Oracle iStore 11*i* hierarchy and to create and modify sections.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–19 Hierarchy Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Refresh	Button	Click to update the hierarchy tree with the changes that have been made since the last Refresh.
Create	Button	Click to create a subsection within the currently highlighted section. The parent section must be a navigational section.
Delete	Button	Click to remove the highlighted section from the hierarchy.
Cut	Button	Click to cut the highlighted section from the hierarchy to the clipboard.
Copy	Button	Click to copy the highlighted section from the hierarchy to the clipboard.
Paste	Button	Click to paste a section from the clipboard into the highlighted section. (The highlighted section will host the pasted section.)
Hierarchy	Applet TreeApplet	Use this to view and organize the hierarchy of sections.
Children	Hyperlink	Click to view a listing of all subsections or products within the highlighted section and add more subsections or products.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify multimedia assignments for the highlighted section.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view and select the specialty stores in which the highlighted section appears. Decide whether to include the section in all stores whose root sections are ancestors of this section.
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the relationships in which the highlighted section is involved.

Table D–19 Hierarchy Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Advanced Settings	Hyperlink	Click to enter optional SQL clauses that specify how the highlighted section is populated automatically with Oracle Inventory products and how the section's products are ordered.
Name	Text field	Enter the name of the section as you want it to appear on the Customer UI.
Start Date	Text field	Enter the date when the section should become available in specialty stores.
End Date	Text field	Enter the date when the section should no longer be available in specialty stores.
Section Code	Text field	Enter a name for the section by which you can refer directly to the section in customized templates.
Section Type	Pull-down menu	Use to select whether the section is navigational, featured, or another customized type.
Status	Pull-down menu	Use to select whether the section is published or unpublished. Published sections are available in the Customer UI. Unpublished sections are not available in the Customer UI unless the user has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility.
Select to apply status to all descendant sections	Checkbox	Check if you want all descendant sections to have the same published/unpublished status as the current section.
Short Description	Text field	Enter a short description of the section that can be called by templates to appear on store Web pages displaying the section.
Long Description	Text field	Enter a long description of the section that can be called by templates to appear on store Web pages displaying the section.
Keywords	Text field	Enter keywords that will enable keyword-based searches for this section in other screens.

Table D–19 Hierarchy Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Display Parameter	Section	Use this section to specify display settings for this section. If you do not specify display settings here, store-level defaults will be used in store Web pages that display this section.
Template for Displaying this Section	Pull-down menu	Used to select a default template for displaying the section.
Display Style for Products in this Section	Pull-down menu	Used to select the display style for displaying products in this section.
Continue	Button	Click to save the settings in the current detail page for your new section and continue on to the next detail page.
Finish	Button	Click to save your new section and continue on to choose your new section's children.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.11, "Hierarchy Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.9, "Creating and Modifying the Hierarchy"](#)

D.20 Products

Use the Products screen to view a detailed list of products from Oracle Inventory and search for products to include in the specialty stores.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–20 Products Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
View	Pull-down menu/Text field	Use the menu to choose the field on which to search for products. Enter search criteria in the text field and click Go to execute search. % can be used for a wild card character search.

Table D–20 Products Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Wizard	Column heading	This column displays a Publish button if the product is unpublished.
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the product.
Part Number	Column heading	Lists the Oracle Inventory part number for the product.
No. of Sections Assigned	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the product.
Category	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the product.
Relationships	Column heading	Lists the relationship types in which the product is included. Click on a relationship type name to view the Product - Relationships screen.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the product.
Creation Date	Column heading	Lists the date that the product was created in Oracle Inventory.
Status	Column heading	This column indicates whether the product is published (available to include in the specialty stores) or unpublished.
Publish	Button	Click to make an unpublished product available to include in specialty stores.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

[Section 2.11, "Creating Images for Products"](#)

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

D.21 Basic Information (for Products)

Use the Basic Information screen to determine whether to make a product available for inclusion in stores (publish) and write descriptions of a product that can be called by templates to display on the store Web pages.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–21 Basic Information (for Products) Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Hierarchy Paths	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the current product.
Category and Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the current product.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the current product.
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationships screen for the current product.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Stores screen for the current product.
Posting Status	Pull-down menu	Use to select whether the current product is published and available to include in specialty stores. Published products are available in the Customer UI, assuming that they are also included in at least one published section. Unpublished products are not available in the Customer UI unless the user has the IBE_ADMINISTRATOR responsibility.
Short Description	Text field	Enter a short description of the current product that templates can call to display on store Web pages.
Long Description	Text field	Enter a long description of the current product that templates can call to display on store Web pages.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

D.22 Hierarchy Paths (for Products)

Use the Hierarchy Paths screen to remove or add parent sections for the product, edit the date range when this product will be available in each section, and number the product's place in the section's product display order.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–22 Hierarchy Paths (for Products) Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the current product.
Category and Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the current product.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the current product.
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationships screen for the current product.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Stores screen for the current product.
Hierarchy	Section	View the hierarchy tree and highlight sections to add as parent sections for a product.
Home	Java Applet	The root section for the overall Oracle iStore 11i hierarchy tree. Click on the plus sign to expand the tree.
Parent Sections	Section	Use this to choose sections from the hierarchy tree to contain the active product.
Remove	Checkbox	Check this to remove the product from the section.
Section	Column heading	Lists the product's parent section names. Click on the section name hyperlink to view the Hierarchy screen for the section.

Table D–22 Hierarchy Paths (for Products) Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Start Date	Column heading	Enter the date that the product will begin to appear in the section.
End Date	Column heading	Enter the date that the product will no longer appear in the section.
Order	Column heading	Enter a number that indicates the product's place in the section's product display order.
>>	Button	Click to add the highlighted section in the hierarchy tree as a parent section for the product.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.11, "Hierarchy Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.9, "Creating and Modifying the Hierarchy"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

D.23 Category and Display Styles (for Products)

Use the Category and Display Styles screen to view which category the product belongs to and specify the templates called by the display styles for the product.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–23 Category and Display Styles (for Products) Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the current product.
Hierarchy Paths	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the current product.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the current product.

Table D–23 Category and Display Styles (for Products) Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationships screen for the current product.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Stores screen for the current product.
Display Styles	Section	Specify the templates called by the display styles for the product here.
Display Style	Column heading	Lists the display styles cataloged in Oracle iStore 11i.
Template Name	Radio button/Text field	Highlight "Use default setting" to use the category-level template when displaying the product with the specified display style. Highlight the radio button next to the text field and click Go to choose a product-specific template for the display style.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

D.24 Multimedia Components (for Products)

Use the Multimedia Components screen to create product-specific multimedia settings by assigning multimedia object names to multimedia components at the product level.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–24 Multimedia Components (for Products) Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the current product.

Table D–24 Multimedia Components (for Products) Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Hierarchy Paths	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the current product.
Category and Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the current product.
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationships screen for the current product.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Stores screen for the current product.
Multimedia Component	Column heading	Lists the multimedia components cataloged in Oracle iStore 11i.
Multimedia Name	Radio button/Text field	Highlight "Use default setting" to have the multimedia component call the category-level multimedia name when a product is displayed with the multimedia component. Highlight the radio button next to the text field and click Go to choose a product-specific multimedia name for the multimedia component.
Publish	Button	Click to begin the process of making a product available for sale in specialty stores in the Basic Information screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

[Section 2.11, "Creating Images for Products"](#)

D.25 Relationships (for Products)

Use the Relationships screen to view the relationships that a product is in, either as a complete list or limited by relationship type.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–25 Relationships (for Products) Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the current product.
Hierarchy Paths	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the current product.
Category and Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the current product.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the current product.
Specialty Stores	Hyperlink	Click to view the Specialty Stores screen for the current product.
View	Pull-down menu	Use to limit the view list of the product's relationships by a specific relationship type.
Product	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the product to which the current product is related by the specified relationship rule.
Relationship	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationship Detail screen for the specified relationship type.
Rule	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationship Rule Results screen for the specified relationship rule.
Rule Type	Column heading	This column indicates whether the From and To objects in each relationship rule are products, categories, or sections.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

D.26 Specialty Stores (for Products)

Use the Specialty Stores screen to specify whether a product appears in each of the specialty stores that have a section that contains the product.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–26 *Specialty Stores (for Products) Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Basic Information	Hyperlink	Click to view the Basic Information screen for the current product.
Hierarchy Paths	Hyperlink	Click to view the Hierarchy Paths screen for the current product.
Category and Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the current product.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view the Multimedia Components screen for the current product.
Relationships	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationships screen for the current product.
Candidate Specialty Stores	List	Lists the specialty stores that have a section that contains the product, but do not make it available for sale.
>	Button	Click to include the product in the highlighted candidate store.
>>	Button	Click to include the product in all candidate stores.
<<	Button	Click to remove the product from all the stores in which it is currently included.
<	Button	Click to remove the product from the highlighted store in which it is currently included.
Included Specialty Stores	List	Lists the specialty stores that have a section that contains the product and make it available for sale.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.

See Also

[Section 1.10, "Product Catalog Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 2.10, "Setting Up and Modifying the Product Catalog"](#)

D.27 Categories

Use the Categories screen to view a detailed list of item categories from Oracle Inventory that belong to the primary display category set, together with a summary of template, display style, and multimedia component category-level settings.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-27 Categories Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify the list of templates assigned to the category in the Category - Templates Assigned screen.
Description	Column heading	Lists a description of each category.
Templates Assigned	Column heading	Lists the templates assigned to each category and available for association with a display style in this category.
Display Styles	Column heading	Lists the display styles that have specific template assignments for the category.
Multimedia Components	Column heading	Lists the multimedia components that have specific multimedia assignments for the category.

See Also

[Section 1.8, "Relationship of Oracle iStore 11i to Other Oracle Applications"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Section 2.15.1, "Viewing Template Details Assigned to a Category"](#)

[Section 2.15.2, "Assigning a Template to a Category"](#)

D.28 Category - Templates Assigned

Use the Category - Templates Assigned screen to add or remove templates assigned to a category.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–28 *Category - Templates Assigned Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to view display style information related to the category in the Category - Display Styles screen.
Multimedia Component	Hyperlink	Click to view multimedia component information related to the category in the Category - Multimedia Components screen.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to select category template assignments for removal.
Template Name	Column heading	Click on a template name in this column to view and modify the template details, source files, and mappings.
Default Source File for All Sites and Languages	Column heading	View the default template source file name for each template assigned to the category. The source file listed here is the default used in all stores and languages if a specific source file has not been mapped to the specialty store and language combination.
Description	Column heading	Lists the brief description of the template as entered in the Description field of the Template Details screen.
Add	Button	Click to assign another template to the category. A Select Template window listing all available templates appears. Check the boxes in the Select column next to the template(s) you wish to assign. Click Add to add the templates. Click Done to close the Select Template window.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Section 2.15.1, "Viewing Template Details Assigned to a Category"](#)

[Section 2.15.2, "Assigning a Template to a Category"](#)

D.29 Category - Display Styles

Use the Category - Display Styles screen to choose templates for each Oracle iStore 11i display style from the templates assigned to a category.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–29 Category - Display Styles Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Templates Assigned	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify the list of the templates assigned to the category in the Category - Templates Assigned screen.
Multimedia Components	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify multimedia component and multimedia information for the category in the Category - Multimedia Component screen.
Display Style	Column heading	Lists the names of all Oracle iStore 11i display styles.
Template Name	Pull-down menu	Use to select templates to associate with a display style for the category.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data prior to making changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.24, "How the Store Displays Templates"](#)

[Section 2.8, "Cataloging Display Styles"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

[Section 2.15.1, "Viewing Template Details Assigned to a Category"](#)

[Section 2.15.2, "Assigning a Template to a Category"](#)

D.30 Category - Multimedia Components

Use the Category - Multimedia Components screen to create category-specific multimedia settings by assigning multimedia object names to multimedia components at the category level.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-30 *Category - Multimedia Components Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Templates Assigned	Hyperlink	Click to go to the Category - Templates Assigned screen.
Display Styles	Hyperlink	Click to go to the Category - Display Styles screen.
Multimedia Component	Column heading	Lists the multimedia components cataloged in Oracle iStore 11i in the Multimedia Components screen.
Multimedia Name	Pull-down menu	Use to assign a multimedia name to a multimedia component. Click Go to open a Select Multimedia window. Click on a multimedia name in the window listing to assign it to the multimedia component. You can also search for multimedia in the Select Multimedia window.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 1.12, "Multimedia and Templates Key Points and Concepts"](#)

[Section 1.23, "How the Store Displays Multimedia"](#)

[Section 2.6, "Cataloging Multimedia Components"](#)

[Section 2.15, "Assigning Templates, Multimedia, and Styles to Categories"](#)

D.31 Relationships

Use the Relationships screen to view a detailed list of relationship types and remove unwanted relationship types.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–31 Relationships Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Remove	Checkbox	Check to delete a relationship type.
Relationship Name	Hyperlink	Links to the Relationship Detail screen.
Description	Column heading	Lists the description entered during creation of the relationship type.
Start Date	Column heading	Lists the date when the relationship type becomes active, as entered during its creation.
End Date	Column heading	Lists the date when the relationship type is no longer active, as entered during its creation.
Create	Button	Click to create a relationship type in the Create Relationship screen.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

[Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#)

[Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#)

D.32 Create Relationship and Relationship Detail

Use the Create Relationship screen to create a relationship type with a name, description, and effective dates. Use the Relationship Detail screen to view and modify basic information for a relationship type, and to view and remove mapping rules or to add or modify a SQL relationship rule that queries database fields for the relationship type.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–32 *Create Relationship and Relationship Detail Screen Reference*

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Name	Text field	Enter the relationship type name.
Description	Text field	Enter a description for the relationship type to enable description-based searches for this relationship type in other screens.
Start Date	Text field	Enter the date when this relationship type becomes active in the specialty stores.
End Date	Text field	Enter the date when this relationship type becomes inactive in the specialty stores.
Create	Button	Click to save the entered relationship type data and open the Relationship Detail screen for the new relationship type.
Create a SQL Rule	Radio button	Highlight to specify the pairs of related items by SQL query on database fields. (Used primarily by Oracle Consulting or other highly technical personnel.)
Create Mapping Rules	Radio button	Highlight to specify the pairs of related items by mapping rules in the Add Rules screen.
Create Rule	Button	Click this to enter the Add Rules screen if you choose Create Mapping Rules . Click this to enter the Relationship Detail screen if you choose Create a SQL Rule .
Mapping Rules:	Section	View the mapping rules you created between products, categories, and sections for this relationship type.
View	Pull-down menu	Use this to decide whether to list product-to-product mapping rules in this section.

Table D–32 Create Relationship and Relationship Detail Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Remove	Checkbox	Check to remove a mapping rule from this relationship type.
Rule	Hyperlink	Click this to view the Relationship Rule Results screen for a mapping rule.
Rule Type	Column heading	This column shows the types (product, category, or section) of the objects in the relationship rule.
SQL Rule	Text field	Type in a SQL relationship rule that returns the column inventory_item_id in MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS table. You can add tables in the From list and conditions in the Where clause.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.
Add Rules	Button	Click to view the Add Rules screen.
View All Results	Button	Click to view the Relationship Result screen.

See Also

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

[Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#)

[Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#)

D.33 Add Rules

Use the Add Rules screen to create mapping rules which define relationships in a From-To form. You can create relationship rules for the current relationship type between products, categories, and sections. The application evaluates each mapping rule and inserts rows in a table maintaining the preevaluated relationships. For example, if you have a category with two products assigned in your From list and a section with four products assigned in your To list, then Oracle iStore 11i creates a total of eight product relationships.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-33 Add Rules Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Done	Button	Click to view the Relationship Detail screen for the relationship type after adding relationship rules.
Preview Rules	Button	Click to view the Preview Rules screen for the relationship type after adding relationship rules.
Relationship Name	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationship Detail screen for the saved version of this relationship type.
From List:	Section	Use this to view products, categories, or sections in the From side of the relationship rules you are adding. You can remove unwanted From objects from the list here.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to delete the product, category, or section from the relationship rules you are adding.
Name	Column heading	This column shows the names of the From objects.
Type	Column heading	This column shows whether a From object is a product, category, or section.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Select Products/Categories/Sections:	Section	Use this section to search for and select products, categories, and sections to include in the relationship rules you are adding.
View	Pull-down menu	Used to select the type of objects listed in the current view of the Select Products/Categories/Sections section.
Lookup	Pull-down menu	Used to select the field on which to search for relationship objects.
Select	Checkbox	Check to select a product, category, or section for addition to the From or To lists.
Name	Hyperlink	Click to view and modify product information in the Basic Information screen.

Table D–33 Add Rules Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Part Number	Column heading	Lists the products' part numbers in Oracle Inventory.
<	Button	Click to add selected products, categories, or sections to the From list.
>	Button	Click to add selected products, categories, or sections to the To list.
To List:	Section	Use this to view products, categories, or sections in the To side of the relationship rules you are adding. You can remove unwanted To objects from the list here.
Remove	Checkbox	Check to delete the product, category, or section from the relationship rules you are adding.
Name	Column heading	This column shows the names of the To objects.
Type	Column heading	This column shows whether a To object is a product, category, or section.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.

See Also

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

[Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#)

[Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#)

D.34 Preview Rules

Use the Preview Rules screen to preview mapping rules created for a relationship type and exclude any unwanted mapping rules before saving the rules.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–34 Preview Rules Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Relationship Name	Hyperlink	Links to the Relationship Detail screen for this relationship type.

Table D–34 Preview Rules Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Create	Checkbox	Check to create the listed relationship rule in this relationship type.
From Type	Column heading	Lists the types of the From objects (Product, Category, or Section) in the relationship rules.
From Name	Column heading	Lists the names of the From objects in the relationship rules.
To Type	Column heading	Lists the types of the To objects (Product, Category, or Section) in the relationship rules.
To Name	Column heading	Lists the names of the To objects in the relationship rules.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.

See Also

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

[Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#)

[Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#)

D.35 Relationship Rule Results and Relationship Result

Use the Relationship Rule Results screen and the Relationship Result screen to view all of the product-to-product relationships generated by all of the rules in a relationship type, and to exclude specific product-to-product relationships from the relationship type if necessary. The Relationship Rule Results screen, which displays the product-to-product relationships for one rule at a time, and the Relationship Result screen, which displays all product-to-product relationships at once, use the same UI objects.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–35 Relationship Rule Results and Relationship Result Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Relationship	Hyperlink	Click to view the Relationship Detail screen for this relationship type.

Table D–35 Relationship Rule Results and Relationship Result Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Exclude	Checkbox	Check to remove a product-to-product relationship from the relationship type.
From Product	Hyperlink	Click to view the Product - Relationships screen for a product.
To Product	Hyperlink	Click to view the Product - Relationships screen for a product.
Update	Button	Click to save your current changes.
Restore	Button	Click to revert to the original data that existed prior to making unsaved changes.

See Also

[Section 2.14, "Defining Product Relationships"](#)

[Section 2.14.1, "Using Seeded Relationship Types"](#)

[Section 2.14.2, "Creating Relationship Types"](#)

D.36 Purge Entire Cache

Use the Purge Entire Cache screen to purge all sections, all products, or all sections and products from the cache after making changes to them, so that your changes appear in the Customer UI.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–36 Purge Entire Cache Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Purge Section Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge specific sections in the Purge Section Cache screen.
Purge Product Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge specific products in the Purge Product Cache screen.
Purge the entire Section Cache and entire Item Cache	Radio button	Highlight this to purge all sections and products from the cache.
Purge the entire Section Cache only	Radio button	Highlight this to purge all sections from the cache.

Table D–36 Purge Entire Cache Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Purge the entire Item Cache only	Radio button	Highlight this to purge all products from the cache.
Update	Button	Click this to execute the purging option you have chosen.
Restore	Button	Click this to return to the original Purge Entire Cache screen without executing any purge options.

See Also

[Section 3.4, "Managing the Cache"](#)

[Section 3.4.1, "Purging the Entire Cache"](#)

D.37 Purge Section Cache

Use the Purge Section Cache screen to purge specific sections from the cache after making changes to them, so that your changes appear in the Customer UI.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–37 Purge Section Cache Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Purge Entire Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge all sections, all products, or all sections and products in the Purge Entire Cache screen.
Purge Product Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge specific products in the Purge Product Cache screen.
View	Pull-down menu/Text field	Use this to search for the section(s) that you want to purge from the cache. In the pull-down menu, choose to search by Name , Section Code , Section Type , or Status . In the text field, enter the value that you want to search for, using the wildcard character % if necessary. Click Go to execute the search.
Select	Checkbox	Check this to select a section to purge from the cache.

Table D–37 Purge Section Cache Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Section Name	Hyperlink	Click this to view the Hierarchy screen for the section named in this link.
Section Code	Column heading	This column lists the section codes for the sections in your search results.
Section Type	Column heading	This column lists the section types for the sections in your search results.
Status	Column heading	This column lists whether the sections in your search results are published or unpublished.
Update	Button	Click this to purge the section(s) that you have selected.
Restore	Button	Click this to return to the original Purge Section Cache screen without purging any sections.

See Also

[Section 3.4, "Managing the Cache"](#)

[Section 3.4.2, "Purging the Section Cache"](#)

D.38 Section Cache

Use the Section Cache screen to view the contents of the section cache.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–38 Section Cache Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Section Cache Size	Read-only field	Displays the number of sections in the cache.
Section ID	Column heading	Displays the section ID number.
Name	Column heading	Displays the section name.
Section Code	Column heading	Displays the section code.
Section Type	Column heading	Displays the section type (featured or navigational).

See Also[Section 3.4, "Managing the Cache"](#)[Section 3.4.2, "Purging the Section Cache"](#)

D.39 Purge Product Cache

Use the Purge Product Cache screen to purge specific products from the cache after making changes to them, so that your changes appear in the Customer UI.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D-39 Purge Product Cache Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Purge Entire Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge all sections, all products, or all sections and products in the Purge Entire Cache screen.
Purge Section Cache	Hyperlink	Click to purge specific sections in the Purge Section Cache screen.
View	Pull-down menu/Text field	Use this to search for the product(s) that you want to purge from the cache. In the pull-down menu, choose to search by Name , Part Number , Category , or Status . In the text field, enter the value that you want to search for, using the wildcard character % if necessary. Click Go to execute the search.
Select	Checkbox	Check this to select a product to purge from the cache.
Product Name	Hyperlink	Click this to view the Basic Information screen for the product named in this link.
Part Number	Column heading	This column lists the Oracle Inventory part numbers for the products in your search results.
Category	Hyperlink	This link names the category to which the product belongs. Click the link to view the Category and Display Styles screen for the product.
Status	Column heading	This column shows whether the products in your search results are published or unpublished.

Table D–39 Purge Product Cache Screen Reference (Cont.)

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Update	Button	Click this to purge the product(s) that you have selected.
Restore	Button	Click this to return to the default Purge Product Cache screen without purging any products.

See Also

[Section 3.4, "Managing the Cache"](#)

[Section 3.4.3, "Purging the Product Cache"](#)

D.40 Product Cache

Use the Product Cache screen to view the contents of the product cache.

Note: The UI objects actually displayed depend on your application context.

Table D–40 Section Cache Screen Reference

UI Object Name	Type	Description/Usage
Product Cache Size	Read-only field	Displays the number of products in the cache.
Product ID	Column heading	Displays the product ID number.
Product Name	Column heading	Displays the product name.
Part Number	Column heading	Displays the product's Oracle Inventory part number.

See Also

[Section 3.4, "Managing the Cache"](#)

[Section 3.4.3, "Purging the Product Cache"](#)

Glossary

B2B user

A representative of a corporate customer, who is set up in Oracle iStore 11*i* and related applications as an employee of that customer organization. A B2B user registers as a Business User in Oracle iStore 11*i* and accesses the Web stores in a self-service environment. A B2B user can receive additional permissions to manage other users.

B2C user

An individual customer who accesses Oracle iStore 11*i*'s Web stores in a self-service environment.

Blueprint phase

A phase of a project in which the business plan around the solution is developed, the solution is defined, business and system integration requirements are modeled, and the partitions of tasks are defined.

Call-Me-Back link

Allows customers to request telephone assistance from a sales representative.

Checkout

Checkout takes customers to the first in a sequence of checkout pages. Moving through the process, customers enter their shipping address, choose a shipping method, enter payment information and billing address, then review and place their order.

Complementary sell

Complementary sells persuade customers to buy a product that complements a product in which they are interested.

Construction phase

The construction phase of a project is where the solution is built. It involves refining the data and functional models, the physical application modules, and the system interfaces until they meet the business requirements.

ConText

See interMedia.

Context-sensitive advertising

Context-sensitive advertising means that advertisements are targeted to appear along with certain content on the Web site.

Cookie

Cookies are general mechanisms which server side connections use both to store and to retrieve information on the client side of the connection.

Cross-sell

See Complementary sell.

Demilitarized zone (DMZ)

Derived from the term demilitarized zone, it is the area between two firewalls which is isolated from both untrusted and trusted networks.

Deployment system

The basis of the online store Web pages, deployment system is the store that is made accessible to the outside world.

Display Style

A way of displaying products. For a given product and a given display style the rendering is implemented in the template associated for that display style to the product.

End-to-end customizing

End-to-end customizing affects every aspect of the system. New pages and new fields within existing pages must be created on the front end, new code implementing the logic behind those new pages has to be written on the back end.

Firewall

A firewall controls the type of traffic entering a site. Internet traffic should be limited to connections originating from browser-based HTTP sessions, that is, from Telnet and FTP.

Flexfields

Flexfields allow merchants to store additional information in the Oracle iStore 11*i* database according to their specific needs.

Front-end customizing

Front-end customizing involves adding new functionality to the presentation layer of Oracle iStore 11*i*, but without altering the underlying data model, also known as the persistence layer, or involving any third-party systems.

interMedia

Formerly named ConText, interMedia is an Oracle server option which enables text queries to be performed through SQL and PL/SQL.

Invoice

The bill for an order that is generated by AR when items are shipped.

Launch phase

During this phase, the project team prepares for and executes the launch of the store including production installation, validation, documentation, and training.

During this time, the implementation team may perform additional incremental development to provide more functionality or address non-functional requirements, such as enhancing performance and reliability.

Multimedia component

A content attribute that references multimedia objects to display for a product or a section. The merchant can use a multimedia component to reference multimedia indirectly in templates.

Multimedia content

An audio, image, text, video, or binary file. Content or “media content” is the term used by Oracle iStore 11i to refer broadly to any one of the following file types of files: audio, image, text, video, and binary.

Multimedia object

An object that represents a specific type of multimedia, for which any one of a number of physical multimedia files can be used. The merchant can use a multimedia object to reference multimedia directly in templates. The physical multimedia file that is called for a multimedia object depends on the user’s specialty store and display language.

Net Perceptions

Net Perceptions makes recommendations based on ratings contained in its database.

Object caching

Object caching allows you to specify the number and type of objects that you want to cache.

Order status

Order Status allows customers to check the status of their current order. Account customers may also review past orders.

Payments

Payments made by a customer against invoices.

Primary display category

Primary display category of a product determines the default values for multimedia components and display styles. If no values are provided (for a multimedia component or display style) then Oracle iStore 11i uses the value specified for the primary display category in which the product belongs. To determine primary display category, Oracle iStore 11i checks if any of the categories to which the product belongs to is part of the primary display category set (see Primary display category set). If yes, then that category is the primary display category. If the product does not belong to a category in the primary display category set, then there is no primary display category for the product. In such situations, Oracle iStore 11i picks defaults (for multimedia components and display styles) from defaults specified at store level.

Primary display category set

The profile value that specifies which of the categories to which a product belongs is the primary display category.

Product item/Product

An item that is available for sale in Oracle iStore 11i Web stores.

Quote

A collection of items with pricing that a sales representative with the Quote Creator role creates on behalf of a customer in Oracle iStore 11i. See [Shopping cart](#).

Quote Creator

A role that allows the creation and subsequent modification of a quote for customers in Oracle iStore 11i by the merchant organization personnel. This role is typically assigned to sales representatives of the merchant organization. A quote creator can have a variety of permissions, such as the ability to submit a quote as an order and permission to create new customers. See *Oracle HTML Quoting Implementation Guide* for more information.

Rating

Rating is a numeric representation of how much a user would like to see more items like the one being rated. Ratings may be explicit or implicit. Explicit ratings are user actions that directly specify the level of like or dislike of an item.

Registration

Allows walk-in customers to register with the store and become account users.

Sections

A node in the hierarchy. A section can contain other sections or other products.

Secure Electronic Transaction

Secure Electronic Transaction (SET) 1.0 protocol is an open standard developed jointly by Visa and MasterCard to ensure the privacy and security of credit card transactions over open networks such as the Internet.

Settling transactions

Settling transactions includes capturing authorized transactions, processing voids and returns, and batch administration.

Shopping cart

A collection of items that a customer selects for purchase in an Oracle iStore 11*i* Web store. In the context of the quote creator, the shopping cart is referred to as a quote.

Smart Linking

Smart Linking is a mechanism for affiliated sites to link directly into a location within Oracle iStore 11*i*, bypassing the storefront.

Soft launch

The launch of the storefront, where a select group of individuals is allowed to use the site, or the client places the site on the Internet but does not market it.

Specialty store

Multiple, specialized store fronts operated and managed in one central instance. Specialty stores have a specialized look and feel or set of products intended for specific types of customers. Specialty stores may differ in appearance, products, or processing flow. An example of a specialty store is a Web site for children's clothing within a retail clothing Web site.

Store attributes

Store attributes, such as RefSet objects, are common to all Oracle iStore 11*i* stores. Unlike product attributes, which are defined on a per-product basis, store attributes are defined for the store as a whole.

Store Manager

Store Manager is an HTML-based interface that provides a comprehensive set of features for building and maintaining an Internet store. Store Manager tasks are performed in the Oracle iStore 11*i* Merchant UI.

Store Search

Store Search brings up a query form that allows users to search for products in the store.

Templates

Templates contain presentation logic. A template has a logical name and may be manifested in one or more JSPs for different specialty store/language combinations. A merchant may have two JSPs: `home_regular.jsp` and `home_partner.jsp` for the `home_page`. Oracle iStore 11*i* displays `home_regular` when showing the home page to regular users and displays `home_partner.jsp` in the partner specialty store.

Transactional data

Transactional data refers to information that is the result of customer interaction with the store.

Upsell

Upsells aim to persuade customers to buy more expensive types of the same product.

VAD/Partner

A user type with a role that is a variation of a B2B customer. The entity (organization or individual) with which the user is associated has a partner relationship with the merchant owning the Oracle iStore 11*i* installation.

Walk-in users

Customers who do not have a store account.

Index

A

account business flows, 1-37
APIs, B-3, B-5, B-8

B

B2B user permissions, 3-12
 IBE_USER_ADMIN, 3-9
B2B user roles, 3-9
 creating, 3-12
 seeded values, 3-9
B2B users, 1-7, 3-9
 approving, 3-15
 default customer responsibility, 3-8
 default customer role, 3-8
 modifying role assignments, 3-20
 modifying user data, 3-17
 organization accounts, 3-15
 registration, 1-5
 Role Management, 3-11
 role management, 1-7
 shopping cart, 1-7
 user administration, 3-9
 User Management, 3-10
 user management, 1-7
B2C users
 default customer responsibility, 3-8
boolean searching, 1-26
business flow, setting up, 2-1
business objects, 1-4

C

cache management, 3-22
 Merchant UI screens, D-47 to D-51
 product cache, 3-23, 3-24
 purging entire cache, 3-23
 section cache, 3-23
carts and lists, 1-41
Cascading Style Sheets, 2-18
categories, 2-50
 assigning display styles, 2-50
 assigning multimedia, 2-50
 assigning products, 2-50
 assigning templates, 2-50, 2-52
 Merchant UI screens, D-37 to D-40
 modifying settings, 2-50
 viewing, 2-51
 viewing template details, 2-52
checkout, 1-32, 1-35
cookies, B-8
customer addresses, 1-40
customer information business flow, 1-39
customer master business object, 1-4
customer passwords, 1-40

D

display styles, 2-23, 2-28, 2-31
 assigning to categories, 2-50
 Merchant UI screens, D-24 to D-25
 seeded values, 2-24

E

error pages, B-12
exceptions, B-5, B-12
Express Checkout Preferences, 1-40

F

flexfields
 checkout page, 2-64
 item descriptive, 2-38
forms, B-11

H

hierarchy
 assigning products to, 2-25
 creating, 2-25
 key points and concepts, 1-24
 Merchant UI screens, D-26 to D-28
 modifying, 2-25

J

JavaBeans, B-11
JSP processing, 1-49
JSPs, 1-46, 2-16, B-1, B-9, B-11
 Cascading Style Sheets, 2-18
 search, 2-60
 templates, 2-16

K

keywords, 1-26, 2-13, 2-22, 2-53, 2-61

L

layout, changing in JSPs, B-9

M

Merchant UI, 2-4, 2-20
multimedia, 1-25, 1-44
 assigning to categories, 2-50
 business object, 1-4
 cataloging, 2-10

 creating media source files, 2-10
 customizing, 2-9
 Merchant UI screens, D-13 to D-15, D-22 to D-23
 naming, 2-10
multimedia components
 cataloging, 2-13
 Merchant UI screens, D-15 to D-17
 seeded values, 2-14
My Account, 1-40

O

Oracle applications' relationship to iStore, 1-17
Oracle Inventory, 2-25, 2-29, 2-32, 2-33, 2-35, 2-46, 2-48
 setting up for product search, 2-54
order system business object, 1-4
orders and invoices, 1-43

P

PageCompileServlet, 1-50
password
 resetting customer password, 3-21
passwords, 1-40
Payment Books, 1-40
preface
 conventions table sample, 1-xv
product catalog
 business object, 1-4
 key points and concepts, 1-23
 modifying, 2-32
 setting up, 2-32
product searches
 Oracle Inventory prerequisites, 2-54
 profile options, 2-54
products
 adding item descriptive flexfields, 2-38
 assigning to categories, 2-50
 creating images for, 2-37
 defining, 2-32
 Merchant UI screens, D-28 to D-37
 publishing, 2-35

R

- relationship rules, 2-46
- relationship types
 - creating, 2-48
 - seeded values, 2-47
- relationships, 2-29
 - Merchant UI screens, D-41 to D-47
- request object, 1-51
- responsibilities, 1-20
 - application privileges, 1-20
 - customers, 1-22
 - data group, 1-21
 - defining, 1-21
 - function and menu exclusions, 1-21
 - function security, 1-22
 - menu, 1-21
 - predefined, 1-22
 - request security groups, 1-21, 1-22
- roles, 1-20
 - customers, 1-22
 - defining application users, 1-20

S

- search index tables, 2-59
- search process program units, 2-60
- search profile options, 2-54
- searches
 - adding stopwords, 2-61
 - category level, 2-55, 2-57
 - customizing, 2-60
 - key points and concepts, 1-26
 - section level, 2-56, 2-57
 - setting up, 2-53
- Section Code, 2-28
- seeded values
 - B2B user roles, 3-9
 - display styles, 2-24
 - multimedia components, 2-14
 - relationship types, 2-47
- shopping cart, 1-30
 - B2B users, 1-7
 - checkout page flexfields, 2-64
 - customizing, 2-62

- decimal quantities, 2-63
- UOM conversions, 2-63
- specialty store
 - administration, 3-1
 - business object, 1-4
 - creating, 2-2, 2-5
 - globalization, 2-5
 - Merchant UI screens, D-1 to D-12
 - restricting by organization, 1-7
 - root section, 2-7, 2-29
- SQL, 2-29, 2-60
- SQL rules, 2-46
- standard includes, 1-48
- stopwords, 2-61

T

- templates, 1-45
 - account, 1-37
 - assigning to categories, 2-50, 2-52
 - business flows, 1-28
 - business object, 1-4
 - carts and lists, 1-41
 - Cascading Style Sheets, 2-18
 - cataloging, 2-20
 - checkout, 1-32, 1-35
 - choosing names for catalog, 2-18
 - creating source files, 2-16
 - creating text for, 2-32
 - customizing, 2-16
 - for searching, 1-28
 - Merchant UI screens, D-17 to D-23
 - modifying, 2-20
 - orders and invoices, 1-43
 - passing values, B-6
 - shopping cart, 1-30
 - user information, 1-39
- testing the store, 2-67
- text, changing in JSPs, B-9

U

- user information
 - business flows, 1-39
 - business object, 1-4

user interface

 changing layout of, B-9

 changing text in, B-9

 key points and concepts, 1-26

User Management, 1-38

V

values, passing across templates, B-6

W

Web Option tab, 2-35